# Simulink<sup>®</sup> HDL Coder 1 User's Guide

# MATLAB<sup>®</sup> SIMULINK<sup>®</sup>



#### How to Contact The MathWorks



a

www.mathworks.comWebcomp.soft-sys.matlabNewsgroupwww.mathworks.com/contact\_TS.htmlTechnical Support

suggest@mathworks.com bugs@mathworks.com doc@mathworks.com service@mathworks.com info@mathworks.com Product enhancement suggestions Bug reports Documentation error reports Order status, license renewals, passcodes Sales, pricing, and general information



>

508-647-7001 (Fax)

508-647-7000 (Phone)

#### The MathWorks, Inc. 3 Apple Hill Drive Natick, MA 01760-2098

For contact information about worldwide offices, see the MathWorks Web site.

Simulink HDL Coder User's Guide

© COPYRIGHT 2006–2007 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

#### Trademarks

MATLAB, Simulink, Stateflow, Handle Graphics, Real-Time Workshop, and xPC TargetBox are registered trademarks, and SimBiology, SimEvents, and SimHydraulics are trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc.

ModelSim is a registered trademark of Mentor Graphics Corporation.

Incisive® is a registered trademark of Cadence Design Systems.

Other product or brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

#### Patents

The MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see www.mathworks.com/patents for more information.

#### **Revision History**

September 2006 March 2007 Online only New for Version 1.0 (Release 2006b) New for Version 1.1 (Release 2007a)

# Contents

# **Getting Started**

| What Is Simulink HDL Coder?         Simulink HDL Coder in the Hardware Development         Process         Summary of Key Features | 1-2<br>1-2<br>1-3 |
|--|-------------------|
| Expected Users and Prerequisites   | 1-6               |
| Software Requirements and Installation<br>Software Requirements<br>Installing the Software   | 1-7<br>1-7<br>1-8 |
| Available Help and Demos         Online Help         Demos   | 1-9<br>1-9<br>1-9 |

### **Introduction to HDL Code Generation**

# 2

| Overview of Exercises                       | 2-2  |
|---|------|
| The sfir_fixed Demo Model                   | 2-3  |
| Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands   | 2-6  |
| Creating Directories and Local Model File   | 2-6  |
| Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup | 2-7  |
| Generating a VHDL Entity from a Subsystem   | 2-9  |
| Generating VHDL Test Bench Code             | 2-11 |
| Verifying Generated Code                    | 2-12 |
| Generating a Verilog Module and Test Bench  | 2-12 |

| Generating HDL Code in the Simulink GUI                 | 2-15 |
|---|------|
| Creating Directories and Local Model File               | 2-18 |
| Initializing Model Parameters With hdlsetup             | 2-19 |
| Viewing Simulink HDL Coder Options in the Configuration |      |
| Parameters Dialog Box                                   | 2-20 |
| Selecting and Checking a Subsystem for HDL              |      |
| Compatibility   | 2-22 |
| Generating VHDL Code                                    | 2-25 |
| Generating VHDL Test Bench Code                         | 2-27 |
| Verifying Generated Code                                | 2-29 |
| Generating Verilog Model and Test Bench Code            | 2-29 |
|   |      |
| Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code             | 2-30 |

### Code Generation Options in the Simulink HDL Coder GUI

# 3

| Viewing and Setting HDL Coder Options                    | 3-2  |
|--|------|
| HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog |      |
| Box  | 3-2  |
| HDL Coder Options in the Model Explorer                  | 3-3  |
| HDL Coder Menu   | 3-4  |
|  |      |
| Summary of Controls and Properties                       | 3-6  |
| HDL Coder Pane   | 3-6  |
| Global Settings Pane                                     | 3-11 |
| EDA Tool Scripts Pane                                    | 3-19 |
| Test Bench Pane  | 3-25 |

### **Code Generation Control Files**

| Overview of Control Files        | 4-2 |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Selectable Block Implementations | 4-3 |
| Implementation Mappings          |     |
| Control File Demo                | 4-3 |

| Structure of a Control File                          | 4-5  |
|--|------|
| Code Generation Control Objects and Methods          | 4-7  |
| hdlnewcontrol  | 4-7  |
| forEach  | 4-7  |
| forAll   | 4-11 |
| set  | 4-11 |
| generateHDLFor                                       | 4-11 |
|  |      |
| Using Control Files in the Code Generation Process   | 4-13 |
| Creating a Control File                              | 4-13 |
| Associating an Existing Control File with Your Model | 4-14 |
| Detaching a Control File from Your Model             | 4-16 |
| Specifying Block Implementations and Parameters in   |      |
| the Control File                                     | 4-17 |
| Generating Selection/Action Statements with the      |      |
| hdlnewforeach Function                               | 4-17 |
| Blocks with Multiple Implementations                 | 4-21 |
| Summary of Block Implementations                     | 4-27 |
| Summary of block implementations                     |      |

# Generating Bit-True Cycle-Accurate Models

| Overview of Generated Models              | 5-2            |
|---|----------------|
| Example: Numeric Differences              | 5-4            |
| Example: Latency                          | 5-8            |
| Defaults and Options for Generated Models | $5-12 \\ 5-12$ |
| Defaults for Model Generation             |                |
| GUI Options                               | 5-13           |
| Generated Model Properties for makehdl    | 5-14           |

### HDL Compatibility, Code Tracing, and Block Support Reports

6

7

| HDL Compatibility Checker           | 6-2 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Code Tracing Using the Mapping File | 6-5 |
| Supported Blocks Library            | 6-8 |

# Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code

| Overview of HDL Interfaces                       | 7-2 |
|--|-----|
| Generating a Black Box Interface for a Subsystem | 7-3 |
| Generating Interfaces for Referenced Models      | 7-6 |
| Code Generation for HDL Cosimulation Blocks      | 7-7 |

| Pass-Through and No-Op Implementations |  | 7-9 |
|--|--|-----|
|--|--|-----|

#### **Stateflow HDL Code Generation Support**

| Overview of Stateflow HDL Code Generation       | 8-2 |
|---|-----|
| Demos and Related Documentation                 | 8-3 |
| A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL |     |
| Code Generation                                 | 8-5 |
| Stateflow to Simulink Interface                 | 8-5 |

| Data Type Usage  | 8-5                  |
|--|----------------------|
| Chart Initialization   | 8-6                  |
| Registered Output  | 8-6                  |
| Restrictions on Imported Code  | 8-6                  |
| Other Restrictions   | 8-7                  |
|  | 0-1                  |
| Mapping Stateflow Chart Semantics to HDL   | 8-9                  |
| Software Realization of Stateflow Semantics  | 8-9                  |
| Hardware Realization of Stateflow Semantics  | 8-11                 |
| Restrictions for HDL Realization   | 8-14                 |
| Using Mealy and Moore Machine Types in HDL Code<br>Generation<br>Generating HDL for a Mealy Finite State Machine<br>Generating HDL Code for a Moore Finite State Machine | 8-16<br>8-17<br>8-20 |
| Structuring a Model for HDL Code Generation  | 8-25                 |
| Design Patterns Using Advanced Stateflow Features  | 8-31                 |
| Temporal Logic   | 8-31                 |
| Graphical Function   | 8-34                 |
| Hierarchy and Parallelism  | 8-36                 |
| Stateless Charts   | 8-40                 |
| Truth Tables   | 8-43                 |
|  |                      |

#### Generating HDL Code with the Embedded MATLAB Function Block

|  | 9-3  |
|--|------|
| Related Documentation and Demos                  | 9-3  |
| Tutorial Example: Incrementer                    | 9-5  |
| Example Model Overview                           | 9-5  |
| Setting Up                                       | 9-8  |
| Creating the Model and Configuring General Model |      |
| Settings   | 9-9  |
| Adding an Embedded MATLAB Function Block to the  |      |
| Model  | 9-10 |

| Setting Optimal Fixed Point Options for the Embedded<br>MATLAB Function Block | 9-1         |
|---|-------------|
|   | 9-1<br>9-1  |
| Constructing and Connecting the DUT_eML_Block                                 | 0-1         |
|   | 9-1         |
|   | 9-2         |
|   | 9-2         |
| Generating HDL Code   | 9-2         |
| Useful Embedded MATLAB Design Patterns for HDL                                | 9-2         |
| The eml_hdl_design_patterns Library   | 9-2         |
|   | <u>9-2</u>  |
| 8   | 9-3         |
|   | 9-3         |
| Creating Intellectual Property with the Embedded                              |             |
| MATLAB Function Block   | <b>9-</b> 3 |
| Modeling Control Logic and Simple Finite State Machines                       |             |
|   | 9-3         |
| 0   | 9-4         |
| Modeling Hardware Elements  | 9-4         |
| Recommended Practices   | 9-4         |
| Build the Embedded MATLAB Code First  | 9-4         |
|   | 9-4         |
| Use Optimal Fixed Point Option Settings                                       | 9-4         |
| Language Support  | 9-4         |
| Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB Runtime Library                                   |             |
| Support   | <b>9-</b> 4 |
| Variables and Constants   | <b>9-</b> 4 |
| 1   | 9-4         |
| $\cdots \cdots \cdot \mathbf{r}$  | 9-5         |
| 8 1   | 9-5         |
| Control Flow Statements   | 9-5         |
| Other Limitations   | 9-5         |

#### Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools

# 10

| Overview of Script Generation for EDA Tools   | 10-2         |
|---|--------------|
| Defaults for Script Generation  | 10-3         |
| Custom Script Generation  | 10-4         |
| Structure of Generated Script Files<br>Properties for Controlling Script Generation | 10-4<br>10-5 |
| Controlling Script Generation with the EDA Tool Scripts<br>GUI Panel                | 10-8         |
|   | 10-0         |

## **Properties — By Category**

| Language Selection Properties                | 11-2 |
|--|------|
| File Naming and Location Properties          | 11-2 |
| Reset Properties                             | 11-2 |
| Header Comment and General Naming Properties | 11-3 |
| Script Generation Properties                 | 11-4 |
| Port Properties                              | 11-5 |
| Advanced Coding Properties                   | 11-5 |
| Test Bench Properties                        | 11-7 |
| Generated Model Properties                   | 11-7 |

# **Functions — Alphabetical List**

#### **Examples**

| A |   |     |
|---|---|-----|
|   | Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands               | A-2 |
|   | Generating HDL Code in the Simulink Environment $\dots$ | A-2 |
|   | Verifying Generated HDL Code in an HDL Simulator        | A-2 |
|   |   |     |

Index

12

# Getting Started

| What Is Simulink HDL Coder?<br>(p. 1-2)            | Describes key product features and components                                  |
|--|--|
| Expected Users and Prerequisites (p. 1-6)          | Prerequisite knowledge expected of users of this product                       |
| Software Requirements and<br>Installation (p. 1-7) | Software requirements for Simulink<br>HDL Coder; how to install the<br>product |
| Available Help and Demos (p. 1-9)                  | Available documentation and demos<br>related to Simulink HDL Coder             |

# What Is Simulink HDL Coder?

- "Simulink HDL Coder in the Hardware Development Process" on page 1-2
- "Summary of Key Features" on page 1-3

Simulink<sup>®</sup> HDL Coder lets you generate hardware description language (HDL) code based on models developed in Simulink and finite-state machines developed in Stateflow<sup>®</sup>. Simulink HDL Coder brings the Simulink Model-Based Design approach into the domain of application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC) and field programmable gate array (FPGA) development. Using Simulink HDL Coder, system architects and designers can spend more time on fine-tuning algorithms and models through rapid prototyping and experimentation and less time on HDL coding.

# Simulink HDL Coder in the Hardware Development Process

Typically, you use Simulink to model a design intended for realization as an ASIC or FPGA. Once satisfied that the model meets design requirements, you run the Simulink HDL Coder compatibility checker utility to examine model semantics and blocks for HDL code generation compatibility. You then invoke the Simulink HDL Coder code generator, using either the MATLAB<sup>®</sup> command line or the Simulink graphical user interface. Simulink HDL Coder generates VHDL or Verilog code that implements the design embodied in the model.

Usually, you also generate a corresponding test bench. You can use the test bench with HDL simulation tools such as ModelSim<sup>®</sup> to drive the generated HDL code and evaluate its behavior. Simulink HDL Coder generates scripts that automate the process of compiling and simulating your code in these tools. You can also use the MathWorks Link for ModelSim or Link for Cadence<sup>®</sup> Incisive<sup>®</sup> software to cosimulate generated HDL entities within a Simulink model.

The test bench feature increases confidence in the correctness of the generated code and saves time spent on test bench implementation. The design and test process is fully iterative. At any point, you can return to the original Simulink model, make modifications, and regenerate code.

When the design and test phase of the project has been completed, you can easily export the generated HDL code to synthesis and layout tools for hardware realization. Simulink HDL Coder generates synthesis scripts for the Synplify family of synthesis tools.

#### **Extending the Code Generation Process**

Simulink HDL Coder provides a number of ways to extend the code generation process.

By attaching a *code generation control file* to your model, you can direct many details of the code generation process. At the simplest level, you can use a control file to set code generation options; such a control file could be used as a template for code generation in your organization.

Control files also let you specify how code is generated for selected sets of blocks within the model. Simulink HDL Coder provides alternate HDL *block implementations* for a variety of blocks. You can use statements in a control file to select from among implementations optimized for characteristics such as speed, chip area, or low latency.

In some cases, block-specific optimizations may introduce latencies (delays) or numeric computations (for example, saturation or rounding operations) in the generated code that are not in the original Simulink model. To help you evaluate such cases, Simulink HDL Coder creates a *generated model* — a Simulink model that corresponds exactly to the generated HDL code. This generated model lets you run simulations that produce results that are bit-true to the HDL code, and whose timing is cycle-accurate with respect to the HDL code.

You can interface Simulink HDL Coder generated HDL to existing or legacy HDL code. One way to do this is to use a subsystem in your Simulink model as a placeholder for an HDL entity, and generate a *black box* interface (comprising I/O port definitions only) to that entity. Another way is to generate a cosimulation interface by placing an HDL Cosimulation block in your model.

#### **Summary of Key Features**

Key features and components of Simulink HDL Coder include

- Generation of synthesizble VHDL or Verilog code from Simulink models and Stateflow charts
- Code generation configured and initiated via graphical user interface, MATLAB command line interface, or M-file programs
- Test bench generation (VHDL or Verilog) for validating generated code
- Generation of models that are bit-true and cycle-accurate with respect to generated HDL code
- Numerous options for controlling the contents and style of the generated HDL code and test bench
- Block support:
  - Simulink built-in
  - Signal Processing Blockset
  - Link for ModelSim HDL Cosimulation block
  - Link for Cadence Incisive HDL Cosimulation block
  - Stateflow chart
  - Embedded MATLAB Function block
  - User-selectable optimized block implementations provided for commonly used blocks
- Code generation control files support:
  - Selection of alternate block implementations for specific blocks or sets of blocks in the model
  - Setting of code generation options
  - Selection of the model or subsystem from which code is to be generated.
  - Definition of default or template HDL code generation settings for your organization
- Generation of subsystem-based identification comments and mapping files for easy tracing of HDL entities back to corresponding elements of the original model
- Generation of interfaces to existing HDL code via:
  - Black box subsystem implementation

- Cosimulation with ModelSim HDL simulator (requires Link for ModelSim)
- Cosimulation with Cadence Incisive HDL simulator (requires Link for Cadence Incisive software)
- Compatibility checker utility that examines your model for HDL code generation compatibility, and generates HTML report with hyperlinks to problematic blocks
- Generation of scripts for EDA tools:
  - ModelSim
  - Synplify
- Model features supported for code generation in Version 1.0:
  - Real data types only (fixed-point and double) (Complex data types are not supported.)
  - Fixed-step, discrete, single-rate models
  - Scalar and vector ports (row or column vectors only)

1

# **Expected Users and Prerequisites**

Simulink HDL Coder users are system and hardware architects and designers who develop, optimize, and verify ASICs or FPGAs. These designers are experienced with VHDL or Verilog but can benefit from automated HDL code generation.

Users are expected to have prerequisite knowledge in the following areas:

- Hardware design and system integration
- VHDL or Verilog
- MATLAB
- Simulink
- Simulink Fixed Point
- Signal Processing Blockset
- HDL simulators, such as ModelSim or Cadence Incisive
- Synthesis tools, such as Synplify

# Software Requirements and Installation

- "Software Requirements" on page 1-7
- "Installing the Software" on page 1-8

Before installing Simulink HDL Coder, make sure that you have the required MathWorks software listed in "Software Requirements" on page 1-7. See also "VHDL and Verilog Language Support" on page 1-8 to check compatibility with HDL compilers and other tools.

## **Software Requirements**

Simulink HDL Coder requires the following products (version numbers correspond to MATLAB Release 2006b):

- MATLAB
- Simulink
- Simulink Fixed Point
- Fixed-Point Toolbox

The following related products are recommended for use with Simulink HDL Coder:

- Stateflow
- Filter Design HDL Coder

**Note** Filter Design HDL Coder is required to generate code for the Digital Filter block.

- Link for ModelSim
- Link for Cadence Incisive
- Signal Processing Toolbox
- Signal Processing Blockset

#### Software Requirements for Simulink HDL Coder Demos

To operate some demos shipped with this release, the following related products are required:

- Filter Design Toolbox
- Filter Design HDL Coder
- Link for ModelSim
- Communications Toolbox (required to use Viterbi Decoder demo)
- Communications Blockset (required to use Viterbi Decoder demo)

#### **VHDL and Verilog Language Support**

Simulink HDL Coder is compatible with HDL compilers, simulators and other tools that support

- VHDL versions 93 and 02
- Verilog-2001 (IEEE 1364-2001) or later

## Installing the Software

For information on installing the required software listed previously, and optional software, see the MATLAB installation documentation for your platform.

After completing your installation, work through the examples in Chapter 2, "Introduction to HDL Code Generation", to acquaint yourself with the operation of the product.

# **Available Help and Demos**

- "Online Help" on page 1-9
- "Demos" on page 1-9

## **Online Help**

The following online help is available:

- Online help is available in the MATLAB Help browser. Click the Simulink HDL Coder product link in the browser's Contents pane.
- Documentation in PDF format is available through the Simulink HDL Coder roadmap page in the MATLAB Help browser. Click the **Simulink HDL Coder > Printable Documentation (PDF)** link in the browser's Contents pane.
- M-help for the command line interface functions makehdl, makehdltb, checkhdl, hdllib, and hdlsetup is available through the MATLAB doc and help commands. For example:

help makehdl

#### Demos

Simulink HDL Coder provides a number of models demonstrating aspects of HDL code generation. To access the demo models:

**1** Type the following command at the MATLAB prompt:

demos

- **2** The **Help** window opens.
- 3 In the **Demos** pane on the left, select **Simulink > Simulink HDL Coder**.
- **4** The right pane displays hyperlinks to the available demos. Click the link to the desired demo and follow the demo instructions.

# Introduction to HDL Code Generation

Overview of Exercises (p. 2-2)

The sfir\_fixed Demo Model (p. 2-3)

Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands (p. 2-6)

Generating HDL Code in the Simulink GUI (p. 2-15)

Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code (p. 2-30)

Overview of what you will learn in the exercises in this chapter

Description of demo model that is used in code generation exercises

Generating VHDL and Verilog code and test benches in the MATLAB command line environment

Generating VHDL and Verilog code and test benches using the Simulink Configuration Parameters dialog box

Using an HDL simulator to verify generated HDL code

# **Overview of Exercises**

Simulink HDL Coder supports HDL code generation in your choice of environments:

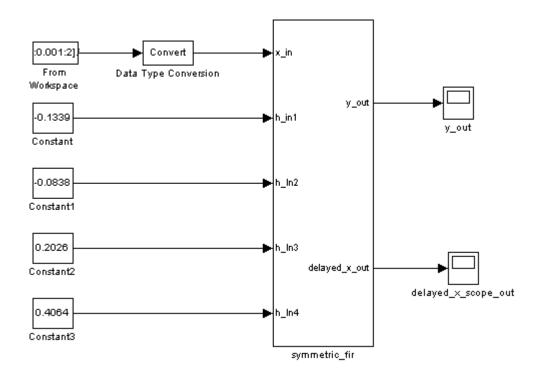
- The MATLAB Command Window supports code generation using the makehdl, makehdltb, and other functions.
- The Simulink graphical environment (the Simulink Configuration Parameters dialog box and/or Model Explorer) provides an integrated view of the model simulation parameters and HDL code generation parameters and functions.

The hands-on exercises in this chapter introduce you to the mechanics of generating and simulating HDL code with Simulink HDL Coder, using the same model to generate code in both environments. In a series of steps, you will

- Configure a simple Simulink model for code generation.
- Generate VHDL code from a subsystem of the model.
- Generate a VHDL test bench and scripts for the ModelSim HDL simulator to drive a simulation of the model.
- Compile and execute the model and test bench code in ModelSim.
- Generate and simulate Verilog code from the same model.
- Check a model for compatibility with Simulink HDL Coder.

# The sfir\_fixed Demo Model

Simulink HDL Coder provides the sfir\_fixed demo model as a source model for HDL code generation. The model simulates a symmetric finite impulse response (FIR) filter algorithm, implemented with fixed-point arithmetic. The following figure shows the top level of the model.



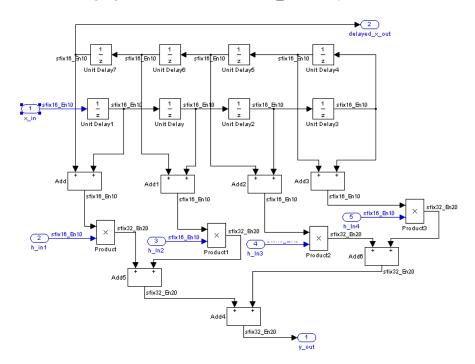
This model employs a division of labor that is useful in HDL design:

- The symmetric\_fir subsystem, which implements the filter algorithm, is the device under test (DUT). An HDL entity will be generated, tested, and eventually synthesized from this subsystem.
- The top-level model components that drive the subsystem work as a test bench.

The top-level model generates 16-bit fixed-point input signals for the symmetric\_fir subsystem. The Signal From Workspace block generates a test input (stimulus) signal for the filter. The four Constant blocks provide filter coefficients.

The Scope blocks are used in Simulink simulation only. They are virtual blocks, and do not generate any HDL code.

The following figure shows the symmetric\_fir subsystem.



Simulink propagates appropriate fixed-point data types throughout the subsystem. Inputs inherit the data types of the signals presented to them. Where required, internal rules of the blocks determine the correct output data type, given the input data types and the operation performed (for example, the Product blocks output 32-bit signals).

The filter outputs a 32-bit fixed-point result at the y\_out port, and also replicates its input (after passing it through several delay stages) at the delayed\_x\_out port.

In the exercises that follow, you generate VHDL code that implements the symmetric\_fir subsystem as an entity. You then generate a test bench from the top-level model. The test bench drives the generated entity, for the required number of clock steps, with stimulus data generated from the Signal From Workspace block.

# **Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands**

This exercise provides a step-by-step introduction to the Simulink HDL Coder code and test bench generation commands, their arguments, and the files created by the code generator. The exercise assumes that you have familiarized yourself with the demo model (see "The sfir\_fixed Demo Model" on page 2-3).

The exercise walks you through command line based code generation in the following sections:

- "Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-6
- "Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup" on page 2-7
- "Generating a VHDL Entity from a Subsystem" on page 2-9
- "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-11
- "Verifying Generated Code" on page 2-29
- "Generating a Verilog Module and Test Bench" on page 2-12

#### **Creating Directories and Local Model File**

Make a local copy of the demo model and store it in a working directory, as follows.

- 1 Start MATLAB.
- 2 Create a directory named sl\_hdlcoder\_work, for example:

mkdir D:\work\sl\_hdlcoder\_work

The sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory will store a local copy of the demo model and to store directories and code generated by Simulink HDL Coder. The location of the directory does not matter, except that it should not be within the MATLAB directory tree.

3 Make the sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory your working directory, for example:

cd D:\work\sl\_hdlcoder\_work

**4** To open the demo model, type the following command at the MATLAB prompt:

demos

**5** The **Help** window opens. In the **Demos** pane on the left, click the + for **Simulink**. Then click the + for **Simulink HDL Coder**. Then double-click the list entry for the Symmetric FIR Filter Demo.

The sfir\_fixed model opens.

- 6 Select **Save As** from the Simulink **File** menu and save a local copy of sfir\_fixed.mdl. to your working directory.
- 7 Leave the sfir\_fixed model open and proceed to the next section.

## Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup

Before generating code, you must set some parameters of the model. Rather than doing this manually, use the Simulink HDL Coder M-file utility, hdlsetup.m. The hdlsetup command uses the Simulink set\_param function to set up models for HDL code generation quickly and consistently.

To set the model parameters:

1 At the MATLAB command prompt, type

hdlsetup('sfir\_fixed')

2 Select **Save** from the Simulink **File** menu, to save the model with its new settings.

Before continuing with code generation, consider the settings that hdlsetup applies to the model.

hdlsetup configures Simulink **Solver** options that are recommended or required by Simulink HDL Coder. These are

• **Type**: Fixed-step. Simulink HDL Coder does not currently support variable-step solvers.

- **Solver**: discrete (no continuous states). Other fixed-step solvers could be selected, but this option is usually the correct one for simulating discrete systems.
- **Tasking mode**: SingleTasking. Simulink HDL Coder does not currently support models that execute in multitasking mode.

hdlsetup also configures the model start and stop times and fixed-step size as follows:

- Start Time: 0.0 s
- Stop Time: 10 s
- Fixed step size (fundamental periodic sample time): auto

Setting **Fixed step size** to auto causes Simulink to choose the step size, based on the sample times specified in the model. In the demo model, only the Signal From Workspace block specifies an explicit sample time (1 s); all other blocks inherit this sample time.

The model start and stop times determine the total simulation time. This in turn determines the size of data arrays that are generated to provide stimulus and output data for generated test benches. For the demo model, computation of 10 seconds of test data does not take a significant amount of time. Computation of sample values for more complex models can be time consuming. In such cases, you may want to decrease the total simulation time.

The remaining parameters set by hdlsetup affect Simulink error severity levels, data logging, and model display options. If you want to view the complete set of model parameters affected by hdlsetup, open hdlsetup.m in the MATLAB editor.

The model parameter settings provided by hdlsetup are intended as useful defaults, but they may not be appropriate for all your applications. For example, hdlsetup sets a default **Simulation stop time** of 10 s. A total simulation time of 1000 s would be more realistic for a test of the sfir\_fixed demo model. If you would like to change the simulation time, enter the desired value into the **Simulation stop time** field of the Simulink window.

See the "Model Parameters" table in the "Model and Block Parameters" section of the Simulink documentation for a summary of user-settable model parameters.

## Generating a VHDL Entity from a Subsystem

In this section, you will use the makehdl function to generate code for a VHDL entity from the symmetric\_fir subsystem of the demo model. makehdl also generates script files for third-party HDL simulation and synthesis tools.

makehdl lets you specify numerous properties that control various features of the generated code. In this example, you will use defaults for all makehdl properties.

Before generating code, make sure that you have completed the steps described in "Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-6 and "Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup" on page 2-7.

To generate code:

- 1 Select **Current Directory** from the **Desktop** menu in the MATLAB window. This displays the MATLAB Current Directory browser, which lets you easily access your working directory and the files that will be generated within it.
- 2 At the MATLAB prompt, type the command

makehdl('sfir\_fixed/symmetric\_fir')

This command directs Simulink HDL Coder to generate code from the symmetric\_fir subsystem within the sfir\_fixed model, using default values for all properties.

**3** Simulink HDL Coder generates code and displays progress messages. The process should complete successfully with the message

### HDL Code Generation Complete.

Observe that the names of generated files in the progress messages are hyperlinked. After code generation completes, you can click these hyperlinks to view the files in the MATLAB editor. makehdl compiles the model before generating code. Depending on model display options (for example, sample time colors, port data types, etc.), the appearance of the model may change after code generation.

**4** By default, makehdl generates VHDL code. Code files and scripts are written to a *target directory*. The default target directory is a subdirectory of your working directory, named hdlsrc.

A folder icon for the hdlsrc directory is now visible in the Current Directory browser. To view generated code and script files, double-click the hdlsrc folder icon.

- 5 The files that makehdl has generated in the hdlsrc directory are
  - symmetric\_fir.vhd: VHDL code. This file contains an entity definition and RTL architecture implementing the symmetric\_fir filter.
  - symmetric\_fir\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vcom command) to compile the generated VHDL code.
  - symmetric\_fir\_symplify.tcl: Symplify synthesis script
  - symmetric\_fir\_map.txt: Mapping file. This report file maps generated entities (or modules) to the Simulink subsystems that generated them (see "Code Tracing Using the Mapping File" on page 6-5).
- **6** To view the generated VHDL code in the MATLAB editor, double-click the symmetric\_fir.vhd file icon in the Current Directory browser.

At this point it is suggested that you study the ENTITY and ARCHITECTURE definitions while referring to "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13 in the makehdl reference documentation. The reference documentation describes the default naming conventions and correspondences between the elements of a Simulink model (subsystems, ports, signals, etc.) and elements of generated HDL code.

- 7 Before proceeding to the next section, close any files you have opened in the MATLAB editor. Then, click the Go Up One Level button in the Current Directory browser, to set the current directory back to your sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory.
- 8 Leave the sfir\_fixed model open and proceed to the next section.

## **Generating VHDL Test Bench Code**

In this section, you use the Simulink HDL Coder test bench generation function, makehdltb, to generate a VHDL test bench. The test bench is designed to drive and verify the operation of the symmetric\_fir entity that was generated in the previous section. A generated test bench includes

- Stimulus data generated by signal sources connected to the entity under test.
- Output data generated by the entity under test. During a test bench run, this data is compared to the outputs of the VHDL model, for verification purposes.
- Clock, reset, and clock enable inputs to drive the entity under test.
- A component instantiation of the entity under test.
- Code to drive the entity under test and compare its outputs to the expected data.

In addition, makehdltb generates ModelSim scripts to compile and execute the test bench.

This exercise assumes that your working directory is the same as that used in the previous section. This directory now contains an hdlsrc folder containing the previously generated code.

To generate a test bench:

1 At the MATLAB prompt, type the command

```
makehdltb('sfir fixed/symmetric fir')
```

This command generates a test bench that is designed to interface to and validate code generated from symmetric\_fir (or from a subsystem with a functionally identical interface). By default, VHDL test bench code, as well as scripts, are generated in the hdlsrc target directory.

**2** Simulink HDL Coder generates code and displays progress messages. The process should complete successfully with the message

### HDL TestBench Generation Complete.

**3** To view generated test bench and script files, double-click the hdlsrc folder icon in the Current Directory browser. Alternatively, you can click the hyperlinked names of generated files in the code test bench generation progress messages.

The files generated by makehdltb are

- symmetric\_fir\_tb.vhd: VHDL test bench code and generated test and output data.
- symmetric\_fir\_tb\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vcom commands). This script compiles and loads both the entity to be tested (symmetric\_fir.vhd) and the test bench code (symmetric\_fir\_tb.vhd).
- symmetric\_fir\_tb\_sim.do: ModelSim script to initialize the simulator, set up **wave** window signal displays, and run a simulation.
- 4 If you want to view the generated test bench code in the MATLAB editor, double-click the symmetric\_fir.vhd file icon in the Current Directory browser. You may want to study the code while referring to the makehdltb reference documentation, which describes the default actions of the test bench generator.
- 5 Before proceeding to the next section, close any files you have opened in the MATLAB editor. Then, click the Go Up One Level button in the Current Directory browser, to set the current directory back to your sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory.

### **Verifying Generated Code**

You can now take the previously generated code and test bench to an HDL simulator for simulated execution and verification of results. See "Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code" on page 2-30 for an example of how to use generated test bench and script files with the Mentor Graphics HDL simulator, ModelSim SE/PE.

### Generating a Verilog Module and Test Bench

The procedures for generating Verilog code differ only slightly from those for generating VHDL code. This section provides an overview of the command syntax and the generated files.

#### Generating a Verilog Module

By default, makehdl generates VHDL code. To override the default and generate Verilog code, you must pass in a property/value pair to makehdl, setting the TargetLanguage property to 'verilog', as in this example.

```
makehdl('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir','TargetLanguage','verilog')
```

The previous command generates Verilog source code, as well as ModelSim and Synplify scripts, in the default target directory, hdlsrc.

The files generated by this example command are

- symmetric\_fir.v: Verilog code. This file contains a Verilog module implementing the symmetric\_fir subsystem.
- symmetric\_fir\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vlog command) to compile the generated Verilog code.
- symmetric\_fir\_symplify.tcl: Symplify synthesis script.
- symmetric\_fir\_map.txt.: Mapping file. This report file maps generated entities (or modules) to the Simulink subsystems that generated them (see "Code Tracing Using the Mapping File" on page 6-5).

#### Generating and Executing a Verilog Test Bench

The makehdltb syntax for overriding the target language is exactly the same as that for makehdl. The following example generates Verilog test bench code to drive the Verilog module, symmetric\_fir, in the default target directory.

```
makehdltb('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir', 'TargetLanguage', 'verilog')
```

The files generated by this example command are

- symmetric\_fir\_tb.v: Verilog test bench code and generated test and output data.
- symmetric\_fir\_tb\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vlog commands). This script compiles and loads both the entity to be tested (symmetric\_fir.v) and the test bench code (symmetric\_fir\_tb.v).

• symmetric\_fir\_tb\_sim.do: ModelSim script to initialize the simulator, set up **wave** window signal displays, and run a simulation.

The following listing shows the commands and responses from a ModelSim test bench session using the generated scripts.

```
ModelSim>vlib work
ModelSim> do symmetric_fir_tb_compile.do
# Model Technology ModelSim SE vlog 6.0 Compiler 2004.08 Aug 19 2004
# -- Compiling module symmetric_fir
#
# Top level modules:
# symmetric_fir
# Model Technology ModelSim SE vlog 6.0 Compiler 2004.08 Aug 19 2004
# -- Compiling module symmetric_fir_tb
#
# Top level modules:
# symmetric_fir_tb
ModelSim>do symmetric_fir_tb_sim.do
# vsim work.symmetric_fir_tb
# Loading work.symmetric_fir_tb
# Loading work.symmetric_fir
# **** Test Complete. ****
# Break at
d:/work/sl_hdlcoder_work/vlog_code/symmetric_fir_tb.v line 142
# Simulation Breakpoint:Break at
d:/work/sl_hdlcoder_work/vlog_code/symmetric_fir_tb.v line 142
# MACRO ./symmetric_fir_tb_sim.do PAUSED at line 14
```

# Generating HDL Code in the Simulink GUI

- "Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-18
- "Initializing Model Parameters With hdlsetup" on page 2-19
- "Viewing Simulink HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box" on page 2-20
- "Selecting and Checking a Subsystem for HDL Compatibility" on page 2-22
- "Generating VHDL Code" on page 2-25
- "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-27
- "Verifying Generated Code" on page 2-29
- "Generating Verilog Model and Test Bench Code" on page 2-29

Simulink provides visual access to options and parameters that affect HDL code generation, within the framework of a Simulink configuration set. You can view and edit these options in the Simulink Configuration Parameters dialog box, or in the Simulink Model Explorer.

The following figure shows the top-level **HDL Coder** options pane as displayed in the Configuration Parameters dialog box.

| 🍇 Configuration Paramete  | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (A   | ctive)   |        |  | ×     |
|---|---|--|--------|--|-------|
| Configuration Paramete      Select:         Select:         Data Import/Export         Optimization         Data Validity         Type Conversion         Connectivity         Optimize Implementation         Model Referencing         Real-Time Workshop         Comments         Symbols         Custom Code         Debug         Interface         Hat Gade         Ceder         Global Settings         Test Bench         EDA Tool Scripts         Sumplementation         Debug         Debug | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (A<br>Code generation control file<br>File name: sfir_fixed_control<br>Target<br>Generate HDL for:<br>Language:<br>Directory:<br>Code generation output<br>© Generate HDL code<br>© Display generated model only<br>© Generate HDL code and disp<br>Restore Factory Defaults | sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir v<br>vhdl v<br>hdlsrc |        | Loc<br>Sav<br>Brow<br>Run Compatibility Cl<br>Generate | id    |
|   |   | OK   | Cancel | Help   | Apply |

The following figure shows the top-level **HDL Coder** options pane as displayed in the Model Explorer.

| 🐼 Model Explorer              |                                       |   |     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----|
| File Edit View Tools Add Help |                                       |   |     |
| 📗 🗅 🥔 🕺 🐂 🖏 🗙 🗐 🛄             | モ集国 彡 舌 fo 🔵 💷 🔳                      |   |     |
| Search: by Name 💌 N           | lame:                                 | 😭 Search  |     |
| Model Hierarchy               | Contents of: sfir_fixed/Configuration | HDL Coder   |     |
| 🗄 🚰 Simulink Root             | Name StopTim                          |   |     |
| Configuration Preferences     | Solver 2000     Data Import/Export    | Code generation control file                      |     |
| 🖃 🙀 sfir_fixed*               | Optimization                          | File name: sfir_fixed_control Load                |     |
| Model Workspace               | Diagnostics                           | Save  |     |
|                               | le Hardware Implementation            |   | -   |
|                               | Model Referencing Real-Time Workshop  | Target  |     |
| 时 Model Info1                 | HDL Coder                             | Generate HDL for: sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir        |     |
| 🗠 Run Demo                    |                                       | Language: vhdl                                    | 411 |
| 📩 symmetric_fir               |                                       | Directory: hdlsrc Browse                          |     |
|                               |                                       | Code generation output                            |     |
|                               |                                       |   |     |
|                               |                                       | C (Display generated model only                   |     |
|                               |                                       | C Generate HDL code and display generated model   |     |
|                               |                                       |   |     |
|                               |                                       |   |     |
|                               |                                       |   |     |
|                               |                                       |   |     |
|                               |                                       | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checke | 1   |
|                               | •                                     | Generate  |     |
|                               | Contents Search Results               | Revert Help Appl                                  | v 1 |
| 1                             |                                       |   |     |

If you are not familiar with Simulink configuration sets and how to view and edit them in the Configuration Parameters dialog box, see the following sections of the Simulink documentation:

- "Configuration Sets"
- "Configuration Parameters Dialog Box"

If you are not familiar with the Model Explorer, see "Exploring, Searching, and Browsing Models" in the Simulink documentation.

In the hands-on code generation exercises that follow, you will use the Configuration Parameters dialog box view of Simulink HDL Coder options and controls. The exercises use the sfir\_fixed demo model (see "The sfir\_fixed Demo Model" on page 2-3) in basic code generation steps, including

- "Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-18
- "Initializing Model Parameters With hdlsetup" on page 2-19

- "Viewing Simulink HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box" on page 2-20
- "Selecting and Checking a Subsystem for HDL Compatibility" on page 2-22
- "Generating VHDL Code" on page 2-25
- "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-27
- "Verifying Generated Code" on page 2-29
- "Generating Verilog Model and Test Bench Code" on page 2-29

#### **Creating Directories and Local Model File**

Start by setting up a working directory and making a copy of the sfir\_fixed demo model:

- 1 Start MATLAB.
- 2 Create a directory named sl\_hdlcoder\_work, for example:

mkdir D:\work\sl\_hdlcoder\_work

You will use sl\_hdlcoder\_work to store a local copy of the demo model and to store directories and code generated by Simulink HDL Coder. The location of the directory does not matter, except that it should not be within the MATLAB directory tree.

**3** Make the sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory your working directory, for example:

cd D:\work\sl\_hdlcoder\_work

**4** To open the demo model, type the following command at the MATLAB prompt:

demos

The Help window opens.

5 In the Demos pane on the left, click the + for Simulink. Then click the + for Simulink HDL Coder. Then double-click the list entry for the Symmetric FIR Filter Demo.

The sfir\_fixed model opens.

- 6 Select **Save As** from the Simulink **File** menu and save a local copy of sfir\_fixed.mdl to your working directory.
- 7 Leave the sfir\_fixed model open and proceed to the next section.

### **Initializing Model Parameters With hdlsetup**

Before generating code, you must set some parameters of the model. Rather than doing this manually, use the Simulink HDL Coder M-file utility, hdlsetup.m. The hdlsetup command uses the Simulink set\_param function to set up models for HDL code generation quickly and consistently.

To set the model parameters:

1 At the MATLAB command prompt, type

hdlsetup('sfir\_fixed')

2 Select **Save** from the Simulink **File** menu, to save the model with its new settings.

Before continuing with code generation, consider the settings that hdlsetup applies to the model.

hdlsetup configures Simulink **Solver** options that are recommended or required by Simulink HDL Coder. These are

- **Type**: Fixed-step. Simulink HDL Coder does not currently support variable-step solvers.
- **Solver**: discrete (no continuous states). Other fixed-step solvers could be selected, but this option is usually the correct one for simulating discrete systems.
- **Tasking mode**: SingleTasking. Simulink HDL Coder does not currently support models that execute in multitasking mode.

hdlsetup also configures the model start and stop times and fixed-step size as follows:

- Start Time: 0.0 s
- Stop Time: 10 s
- Fixed step size (fundamental periodic sample time): auto

Setting **Fixed step size** to auto causes Simulink to choose the step size, based on the sample times specified in the model. In the demo model, only the Signal From Workspace block specifies an explicit sample time (1 s); all other blocks inherit this sample time.

The model start and stop times determine the total simulation time. This in turn determines the size of data arrays that are generated to provide stimulus and output data for generated test benches. For the demo model, computation of 10 seconds of test data does not take a significant amount of time. Computation of sample values for more complex models can be time consuming. In such cases, you may want to decrease the total simulation time.

The remaining parameters set by hdlsetup affect Simulink error severity levels, data logging, and model display options. If you want to view the complete set of model parameters affected by hdlsetup, open hdlsetup.m in the MATLAB editor.

The model parameter settings provided by hdlsetup are intended as useful defaults, but they may not be appropriate for all your applications. For example, hdlsetup sets a default **Simulation stop time** of 10 s. A total simulation time of 1000 s would be more realistic for a test of the sfir\_fixed demo model. If you would like to change the simulation time, enter the desired value into the **Simulation stop time** field of the Simulink window.

See the "Model Parameters" table in the "Model and Block Parameters" section of the Simulink documentation for a summary of user-settable model parameters.

# Viewing Simulink HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box

The Simulink HDL Coder option settings are a category of the model's active configuration set. You can view and edit these options in the Configuration Parameters dialog box, or in the Simulink Model Explorer. This discussion uses the Configuration Parameters dialog box.

To access the Simulink HDL Coder settings:

1 Select Configuration Parameters from the Simulation menu in the sfir\_fixed model window.

The Configuration Parameters dialog box opens with the **Solver** options pane displayed, as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter            | 's: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |  |                              |              |       | × |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|------------------------------|--------------|-------|---|
| Configuration Parameter      Select: | Sir_fixed/Configuration (Active)     Simulation time     Start time: 0.0     Solver options     Type: Fixed-step     Periodic sample time constraint:     Fixed-step size (fundamental sample time):     Tasking mode for periodic sample times:     Higher priority value indicates higher ta     Automatically handle data transfers bet | Unconstrained<br>auto<br>SingleTasking<br>ask priority | e: 10<br>discrete (no contin | uous states) | ×     | * |
|                                      |  |  |                              |              |       | - |
|                                      |  | OK   | Cancel                       | Help         | Apply |   |

- **2** Observe that the **Select** tree in the left panel of the dialog box includes an **HDL Coder** category, as shown.
- **3** Click the **HDL Coder** category in the **Select** tree. The **HDL Coder** pane is displayed, as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Paramete  | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |
|---|--|
| Select:   | Code generation control file   |
| Select     Select     Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Sample Time     Optimization     Optizet     Optizet     Optimization     Optimiz | File name:       stir_fixed_control         Load       Save         Target       Generate HDL for:       stir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Language:       vhdl       vhdl         Directory:       hdisrc       Browse         Code generation output       © Generate HDL code       © Display generated model only         © Generate HDL code and display generated model |
| Debug<br>Interface  | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker   |
| ⊡-HDL Coder<br>Global Settings<br>Test Bench<br>EDA Tool Scripts  | Generate   |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |

The **HDL Coder** pane contains top-level options and buttons that control the HDL code generation process. Several other categories of options are available under the **HDL Coder** entry in the **Select** tree. This exercise uses a small subset of these options, leaving the others at their default settings.

"Summary of Controls and Properties" on page 3-6 summarizes all the options available in the **HDL Coder** category.

#### Selecting and Checking a Subsystem for HDL Compatibility

Simulink HDL Coder generates code from either the current model or from a subsystem at the root level of the current model. You use the **Generate HDL for** menu to select the model or subsystem from which code is to be generated. Each entry in the menu shows the full Simulink path to the model or one of its subcomponents. The sfir\_fixed demo model is configured with the sfixed\_fir/symmetric\_fir subsystem selected for code generation, as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter  | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)   |
|--|---|
| Select:  | Code generation control file  |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Optimization     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Conversion     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing | File name:       stir_fixed_control         Load       Save         Target       stir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Generate HDL for:       sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Language:       vhd         Directory:       hdlsrc         Browse         Code generation output         (* Generate HDL code |
| Comments<br>Symbols<br>Custom Code<br>Debug  | Display generated model only     Generate HDL code and display generated model  |
| Interface  | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker  |
| Global Settings<br>  | Generate  |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply  |

If this is not the case, make sure that the symmetric\_fir subsystem is selected for code generation, as follows:

- 1 Select sfixed\_fir/symmetric\_fir from the Generate HDL for menu.
- **2** Click **Apply**. The dialog box should now appear as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Paramete   | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)   | < |
|--|---|---|
| Select:  | Code generation control file  | 4 |
| Solver<br>Data Import/Export<br>Optimization   | File name:         sfir_fixed_control         Load           Save         Save  |   |
| Diagnostics     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug | Target         Generate HDL for:       sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Language:       vhdl         Directory:       hdlsrc         Browse         Code generation output         © Generate HDL code         © Display generated model only         © Generate HDL code and display generated model |   |
|  | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker Generate   |   |
| EDA Tool Scripts   | OK Cancel Help Apply  |   |

To check HDL compatibility for the subsystem:

- 1 Click the Run Compatibility Checker button.
- **2** The HDL compatibility checker examines the system selected in the **Generate HDL for** menu for any compatibility problems. In this case, the selected subsystem is fully HDL-compatible, and the compatibility checker displays the following message in the MATLAB Command Window.

### Starting HDL Check. ### HDL Check Complete with 0 errors, warnings and messages.

**3** The compatibility checker also displays an HTML report in a Web browser, as shown in the following figure.

| HDL Check Report for sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir<br>File Edit View Go Debug Desktop Window Help      |     |
|---|-----|
| ← → C   善   M   Location: D:/Work/shdlcoder_work/hdlsrc/symmetric_fir_report.html                 | -   |
| HDL Code Generation Check Report for sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir<br>Generated on 2006-03-02 11:13:06 |     |
| No messages, warnings, or errors were found.  |     |
|   |     |
|   | 11. |

## **Generating VHDL Code**

The top-level HDL Coder options are now set as follows:

- The **Generate HDL for** field specifies the sfixed\_fir/symmetric\_fir subsystem for code generation.
- The Language field specifies (by default) generation of VHDL code.
- The **Directory** field specifies a *target directory* that stores generated code files and scripts. The default target directory is a subdirectory of your working directory, named hdlsrc.

The following figure shows these settings.

| 擏 Configuration Parameter                                       | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |
|---|--|
| Select  | Code generation control file   |
| Solver<br>Data Import/Export                                    | File name: stir_fixed_control  |
| Optimization<br>Diagnostics                                     | Save   |
| Sample Time<br>Data Validity<br>Type Conversion<br>Connectivity | Target<br>Generate HDL for: sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir ▼<br>Language: vhd ▼      |
| Compatibility<br>Model Referencing<br>Hardware Implementation   | Directory: hdlsrc Browse   |
| Model Referencing   | Code generation output   |
| ⊡-Real-Time Workshop  | Generate HDL code  |
| Comments<br>Symbols<br>Custom Code                              | Display generated model only     Generate HDL code and display generated model |
|   | Concentrate HDL code and display generated moder                               |
| Interface   | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker                             |
| - Global Settings   | Generate   |
| Test Bench<br>EDA Tool Scripts                                  |  |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |

Before generating code, select **Current Directory** from the **Desktop** menu in the MATLAB window. This displays the MATLAB Current Directory browser, which lets you easily access your working directory and the files that will be generated within it.

To generate code:

- 1 Click the **Generate** button.
- **2** Simulink HDL Coder generates code and displays progress messages. The process should complete successfully with the message

### HDL Code Generation Complete.

Observe that the names of generated files in the progress messages are hyperlinked. After code generation completes, you can click these hyperlinks to view the files in the MATLAB editor.

Simulink HDL Coder compiles the model before generating code. Depending on model display options (for example, sample time colors, port data types, etc.), the appearance of the model may change after code generation.

- **3** A folder icon for the hdlsrc directory is now visible in the Current Directory browser. To view generated code and script files, double-click the hdlsrc folder icon.
- 4 The files that were generated in the hdlsrc directory are
  - symmetric\_fir.vhd: VHDL code. This file contains an entity definition and RTL architecture implementing the symmetric\_fir filter.
  - symmetric\_fir\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vcom command) to compile the generated VHDL code.
  - symmetric\_fir\_symplify.tcl: Symplify synthesis script.
  - symmetric\_fir\_map.txt: Mapping file. This report file maps generated entities (or modules) to the Simulink subsystems that generated them (see "Code Tracing Using the Mapping File" on page 6-5).
- **5** To view the generated VHDL code in the MATLAB editor, double-click the symmetric\_fir.vhd file icon in the Current Directory browser.

At this point it is suggested that you study the ENTITY and ARCHITECTURE definitions while referring to "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13 in the makehdl reference documentation. The reference documentation describes the default naming conventions and correspondences between the elements of a Simulink model (subsystems, ports, signals, etc.) and elements of generated HDL code.

6 Before proceeding to the next section, close any files you have opened in the MATLAB editor. Then, click the Go Up One Level button in the Current Directory browser, to set the current directory back to your sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory.

### **Generating VHDL Test Bench Code**

At this point, the **Generate HDL for**, **Language**, and **Directory** fields are set as they were in the previous section. Accordingly, you can now generate VHDL test bench code to drive the VHDL code generated previously for the sfixed\_fir/symmetric\_fir subsystem. The code will be written to the same target directory as before. To generate a test bench:

 Click the Test Bench entry in the HDL Coder list in the Select tree. The Test Bench pane is displayed, as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter   | s: sfir_fixed/Configurati  | ion (Active) |    |        |                    | ×        | ( |
|---|--|--------------|----|--------|--------------------|----------|---|
| Select:   | Test bench   |              |    |        |                    | <u> </u> | - |
| Solver     Oata Import/Export     Oata Import/Export     Orgonostics     Sample Time     Ota Validity     Type Conversion     Conversion     Compatibility     Model Referencing                      | Test bench name postfix:<br>Force clock<br>Clock high time (ns):<br>Clock low time (ns):<br>Force clock enable<br>Force reset<br>Hold time (ns): | tb<br>5<br>2 |    | _      |                    |          |   |
| Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop    Comments    Symbols    Custom Code    Debug    Interface     E-HOL Coder    Global Settings    Test Bench    EDA Tool Scripts |  |              |    | G      | ienerate Test Benc | h        |   |
|   |  |              | OK | Cancel | Help               | Apply    |   |

- 2 Click the Generate Test bench button.
- **3** Simulink HDL Coder generates code and displays progress messages in the MATLAB window. The process should complete successfully with the message

### HDL TestBench Generation Complete.

- 4 The files that were generated in the hdlsrc directory are
  - symmetric\_fir\_tb.vhd: VHDL test bench code and generated test and output data.
  - symmetric\_fir\_tb\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vcom commands). This script compiles and loads both the entity to be tested (symmetric\_fir.vhd) and the test bench code (symmetric\_fir\_tb.vhd).

• symmetric\_fir\_tb\_sim.do: ModelSim script to initialize the simulator, set up **wave** window signal displays, and run a simulation.

## **Verifying Generated Code**

You can now take the generated code and test bench to an HDL simulator for simulated execution and verification of results. See "Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code" on page 2-30 for an example of how to use generated test bench and script files with the Mentor Graphics HDL simulator, ModelSim SE/PE.

## **Generating Verilog Model and Test Bench Code**

The procedure for generating Verilog code is the same as for generating VHDL code (see "Generating a VHDL Entity from a Subsystem" on page 2-9 and "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-11), except that you should select verilog from the **Language** field of the **HDL Coder** options, as shown in the following figure.

| - Target                                     |        |
|--|--------|
| Generate HDL for: sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir 💌 |        |
| Language: verilog 💌                          |        |
| Directory: hdlsrc                            | Browse |

## Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code

**Note** This section requires the use of the Mentor Graphics HDL simulator, ModelSim SE/PE.

This section assumes that you have generated code from the sfir\_fixed demo model as described in either of the following exercises:

- "Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands" on page 2-6
- "Generating HDL Code in the Simulink GUI" on page 2-15

In this section you compile and run a simulation of the previous generated model and test bench code in ModelSim. The scripts generated by Simulink HDL Coder let you do this with just a few simple commands. The procedure is the same, whether you generated code in the command line environment or in the Simulink environment.

To run the simulation:

- 1 Start ModelSim.
- **2** Set the ModelSim working directory to the directory in which you previously generated code.

ModelSim>cd D:/work/sl\_hdlcoder\_work/hdlsrc

**3** Use the generated compilation script to compile and load the generated model and text bench code. The following listing shows the command and responses from ModelSim.

```
ModelSim>do symmetric_fir_tb_compile.do
# Model Technology ModelSim SE vcom 6.0 Compiler 2004.08 Aug 19 2004
# -- Loading package standard
# -- Loading package std_logic_1164
# -- Loading package numeric_std
# -- Compiling entity symmetric_fir
# -- Compiling architecture rtl of symmetric_fir
# Model Technology ModelSim SE vcom 6.0 Compiler 2004.08 Aug 19 2004
```

- # -- Loading package standard
- # -- Loading package std\_logic\_1164
- # -- Loading package numeric\_std
- # -- Compiling package symmetric\_fir\_tb\_pkg
- # -- Compiling package body symmetric\_fir\_tb\_pkg
- # -- Loading package symmetric\_fir\_tb\_pkg
- # -- Loading package symmetric\_fir\_tb\_pkg
- # -- Compiling entity symmetric\_fir\_tb
- # -- Compiling architecture rtl of symmetric\_fir\_tb
- # -- Loading entity symmetric\_fir
- **4** Use the generated simulation script to execute the simulation. The following listing shows the command and responses from ModelSim. The warning messages are benign.

```
ModelSim>do symmetric_fir_tb_sim.do
# vsim work.symmetric_fir_tb
# Loading D:\Applications\ModelTech_6_0\win32/../std.standard
# Loading D:\Applications\ModelTech_6_0\win32/../ieee.std_logic_1164(body)
# Loading D:\Applications\ModelTech_6_0\win32/../ieee.numeric_std(body)
# Loading work.symmetric_fir_tb_pkg(body)
# Loading work.symmetric_fir_tb(rtl)
# Loading work.symmetric_fir(rtl)
# ** Warning: NUMERIC_STD."<": metavalue detected, returning FALSE</pre>
    Time: 0 ns Iteration: 0 Instance: /symmetric_fir_tb
 ** Warning: NUMERIC_STD.TO_INTEGER: metavalue detected, returning 0
#
    Time: 0 ns Iteration: 1 Instance: /symmetric_fir_tb
#
Time: 140 ns Iteration: 1 Instance: /symmetric_fir_tb
#
```

The test bench termination message indicates that the simulation has run to completion successfully, without any comparison errors.

5 The simulation script displays all inputs and outputs in the model (including the reference signals y\_out\_ref and delayed\_x\_out\_ref ) in the ModelSim **wave** window. The following figure shows the signals displayed in the **wave** window.

| 🔫 wave - default  |   |
|---|---|
| File Edit View Insert Format Tools Window   | । ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] |
| <ul> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/clk</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/clk</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/k_enable</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in1</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in2</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in3</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in4</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in4</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in4</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/n_in4</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/day_out_ref</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/day_out_ref</li> <li>/symmetric_fir_tb/u_symmetric_fir/daysed_x_out_ref</li> </ul> |   |
| Now<br>Cursor 1   | 145 ns 20 40 60 80                      |
| C ns to 97 ns   | 145 ns Delta: 1                         |

- 6 Exit ModelSim when you are through viewing signals.
- 7 Close any files you have opened in the MATLAB editor. Then, click the Go Up One Level button in the Current Directory browser, to set the current directory back to your sl\_hdlcoder\_work directory.

# Code Generation Options in the Simulink HDL Coder GUI

| Viewing and Setting HDL Coder<br>Options (p. 3-2) | HDL options in the Simulink<br>Configuration Parameters dialog box<br>and Model Explorer; the HDL Coder<br>context menu; pointers to related<br>information |
|---|---|
| Summary of Controls and Properties (p. 3-6)       | Summary of GUI properties<br>and options, with links to the<br>corresponding makehdl and<br>makehdltb properties  |

# **Viewing and Setting HDL Coder Options**

The Simulink Configuration Parameters dialog box and the Simulink Model Explorer let you view and set the HDL code generation options, parameters, and controls within a Simulink configuration set. The following topics summarize these options:

- "HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box" on page 3-2
- "HDL Coder Options in the Model Explorer" on page 3-3
- "HDL Coder Menu" on page 3-4

# HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box

The following figure shows the top-level **HDL Coder** options pane as displayed in the Configuration Parameters dialog box. To open this dialog box, select **Simulation > Configuration Parameters** in the Simulink window. Then select **HDL Coder** from the list on the left.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameters: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)   |  |                          |        |                                       |
|---|--|--------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| Configuration Paramete     Select:     Oata Import/Export     Optimization     Optimiz | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (A<br>Code generation control file<br>File name: sfir_fixed_control<br>Target<br>Generate HDL for:<br>Language: | sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir |        | Load                                  |
| Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     G-Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Gymbols     Custom Code     Debug   | Directory:<br>Code generation output<br>Code Generate HDL code<br>Display generated model only<br>Code and disp                              |                          |        | Browse                                |
| ☐HDL Coder<br>Global Settings<br>Test Bench<br>EDA Tool Scripts   | Restore Factory Defaults   | ]                        |        | Run Compatibility Checker<br>Generate |
|   |  | ОК                       | Cancel | Help Apply                            |

If you are not familiar with Simulink configuration sets and how to view and edit them in the Configuration Parameters dialog box, see the "Configuration Sets" and "Configuration Parameters Dialog Box" sections of the Simulink documentation.

**Note** When the **HDL Coder** options pane of the Configuration Parameters dialog box is selected, clicking the Help button displays general help for the Configuration Parameters dialog box.

#### **HDL Coder Options in the Model Explorer**

The following figure shows the top-level **HDL Coder** options pane as displayed in the **Dialog** pane of the Model Explorer.

To view this dialog box, select **View > Model Explorer** in the Simulink window. Then select your model's active configuration set in the **Model** 

| 🐼 Model Explorer  |  |                   |  |
|---|--|-------------------|--|
| File Edit View Tools Add Help   |  |                   |  |
| 」D ☞ お N 亀 ×   目開 モ 物明 彡 お の ●   国 ■   ◆ 算   当 ゴ 其 さ 君  |  |                   |  |
| Search: by Name   | lame:  | 🚰 Search          |  |
| Model Hierarchy<br>Simulink Root<br>Base Workspace<br>Configuration Preferences<br>Model Workspace<br>Model Workspace<br>Advice for stir_fixed<br>Advice for stir_fixed<br>Bodel Intol<br>Ban Demo<br>Symmetric_fir | Contents of: sfir_fixed/Configuration          Name       StopTir         Image: Solver       2000         Data Import/Export       000         Diagnostics       Hardware Implementation         Model Referencing       Real-Time Workshop         HDL Coder       HDL Coder | HDL Coder         |  |
|   | Contents Search Results  | Bevert Help Apply |  |
|   |  |                   |  |

**Hierarchy** tree on the left. Then, select **HDL Coder** from the list in the **Contents** pane.

When the **HDL Coder** options pane is selected in the Model Explorer, clicking the Help button displays the documentation specific to the current tab.

If you are not familiar with the Model Explorer, see "Exploring, Searching, and Browsing Models" in the Simulink documentation.

### **HDL Coder Menu**

The **HDL Coder** submenu of the Simulink **Tools** menu (see the following figure) provides shortcuts to the HDL code generation options. You can also use this menu to initiate code generation.



The HDL Coder submenu options are

- **Options**: Open the **HDL Coder** options pane in the Configuration Parameters dialog box.
- **Generate HDL**: Initiate HDL code generation; equivalent to the **Generate** button in the Configuration Parameters dialog box or Model Explorer.
- Generate Test Bench: Initiate test bench code generation; equivalent to the Generate Test Bench button in the Configuration Parameters dialog box or Model Explorer. If you do not select a subsystem from the top (root) level of the current Simulink model in the Generate HDL for menu, the Generate Test Bench menu option is disabled.

# **Summary of Controls and Properties**

Each code generation option displayed on the GUI corresponds to a makehdl or makehdltb property. The tables in each of the following sections contain hyperlinks to the appropriate property or function reference pages.

Illustrations show the default settings for all options.

The following sections summarize controls and properties in each pane of the Simulink HDL Coder GUI, as displayed in the Configuration Parameters dialog box:

- "HDL Coder Pane" on page 3-6
- "Global Settings Pane" on page 3-11
- "EDA Tool Scripts Pane" on page 3-19
- "Test Bench Pane" on page 3-25

#### **HDL Coder Pane**

The top-level **HDL Coder** pane contains buttons that initiate code generation and compatibility checking, and sets parameters that affect overall operation of code generation.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter   | s: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  | × |
|---|---|---|
| Select:   | -Code generation control file   |   |
| Solver<br>Data Import/Export<br>Diagnostics<br>Sample Time<br>Data Validity   | File name:     sfir_fixed_control   |   |
| - Type Conversion   | Generate HDL for:   |   |
| Connectivity<br>Compatibility<br>Model Referencing  | Language: vhdl  Directory: hdlsrc Browse  |   |
| Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Seal-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug | Code generation output Generate HDL code C Display generated model only C Generate HDL code and display generated model |   |
| Interface   | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker  | 1 |
| idio-HDL Coder<br>— Global Settings<br>— Test Bench<br>— EDA Tool Scripts   | Generate  | ] |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply  |   |

### Main Pane

| Control  | Description  |
|----------|--|
| Generate | Initiates code generation for the system selected in the <b>Generate HDL for</b> menu. See also makehdl. |

| Control                   | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Run Compatibility Checker | Invokes the compatibility checker to examine<br>the system selected in the <b>Generate HDL for</b><br>menu for any compatibility problems. See also<br>checkhdl.   |
| Restore Factory Defaults  | Sets all Simulink HDL Coder properties to<br>their default values. Unlinks the current<br>code generation file (if any) from the<br>model, and clears the <b>File name</b> field.<br><b>Restore Factory Defaults</b> resets all HDL<br>code generation settings. This action cannot<br>be cancelled or undone. To recover previous<br>settings, you must close the model without<br>saving it, and then reopen it. |

#### **Code Generation Control File Pane**

This pane contains options and controls that let you attach a code generation control file to your model. See Chapter 4, "Code Generation Control Files" for a detailed discussion of the structure and use of control files.

| Code generation control file |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| File name: sfir_fixed_config | Load |
|                              | Save |

| Control   | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| File Name | Displays the path and file name of the<br>currently selected control file (if any). This is a<br>display-only field. To select a control file, use<br>the <b>Load</b> button. To clear the <b>File Name</b> field<br>and unlink the current control file, use the<br><b>Restore Factory Defaults</b> button. |

| Control | Description  |
|---------|--|
| Load    | When you click the <b>Load</b> button, a standard<br>file selection dialog box opens. You can then<br>navigate to and select a control file and load it<br>into memory.  |
| Save    | When you click the <b>Save</b> button, a<br>standard file save dialog box opens. You<br>can then save current Simulink HDL<br>Coder settings to a specified control file.<br>A full path to the control file is saved. If<br>you want to specify a relative path, use the<br>HDLControlFiles property of the makehdl<br>command. (See "Using Control Files in the<br>Code Generation Process" on page 4-13). |

## Target Pane

This pane contains top-level code generation options.

| -Target           |            |        |
|-------------------|------------|--------|
| Generate HDL for: | sfir_fixed |        |
| Language:         | vhdl 💌     |        |
| Directory:        | hdlsrc     | Browse |
|                   |            |        |

| Option           | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Generate HDL for | This pop-up menu selects the subsystem or<br>model from which code is generated. The menu<br>displays the Simulink path to the root model<br>and to all root-level subsystems in the model.<br>See also makehd1. |

| Option              | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Language            | This pop-up menu selects the language (VHDL<br>or Verilog) in which code is generated. The<br>selected language is referred to as the target<br>language. The default target language is<br>VHDL. See also TargetLanguage.   |
| Directory<br>Browse | Specifies the directory into which code is<br>generated. The selected directory is referred<br>to as the target directory. The default target<br>directory is a subdirectory of your working<br>directory, named hdlsrc. You can enter a path<br>to the target directory, or click the <b>Browse</b><br>button to navigate to and select a directory. See<br>also TargetDirectory. |

#### **Code Generation Output Pane**

This pane contains options related to the creation and display of generated models. See also Chapter 5, "Generating Bit-True Cycle-Accurate Models".

💿 Generate HDL code

- C Display generated model only
- C Generate HDL and display generated model

| Option  | Property   |
|---|--|
| Generate HDL code                             | Generate HDL code without displaying the generated model. This is the default. |
| Display generated model only                  | Display the generated model without generating HDL code.                       |
| Generate HDL code and display generated model | Display the generated model after HDL code generation completes.               |

### **Global Settings Pane**

The **Global Settings** pane lets you set options to specify detailed characteristics of the generated code, such as HDL element naming and whether certain optimizations are applied.

| 🙀 Configuration Parameter  | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |
|--|--|
| Select   | Clock settings   |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Diptimization     Diptimostics     Data Validity     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity                  | Reset type:       Asynchronous               Reset asserted level: Active-high   |
| Connectivity     Connectivity     Connectivity     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments | General Comment in header: Verilog file extension: Verilog file extension: VHDL file extension: Vhd Entry conflict postfix:entity Package postfix:pkg Reserved word postfix: rsvd Split entity and architecture    |
| Symbols<br>Custom Code<br>Debug<br>Interface<br>E HDL Coder<br><mark>Global Settings</mark><br>Test Bench<br>TeJA Tool Scripts                             | Reserved word postfix:       _rsvd       Split entity and architecture         Clocked process postfix:       _process       Split entity file postfix:       _entity         Split arch file postfix:       _arch |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply   |

#### **Clock Settings Pane**

The **Clock Settings** pane contains options related to the operation of clock and reset signals in the generated HDL code.

| Clock Settings    |                |                       |               |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| Reset Type:       | Asynchronous 📃 | Reset Asserted Level: | Active-high 📃 |
| Clock Input Port: | clk            | Clock Enable Port:    | clk_enable    |
| Reset Input Port: | reset          |                       |               |
|                   |                |                       |               |

| Option               | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| Reset Type           | Specifies whether to use asynchronous or<br>synchronous reset logic when generating HDL<br>code for registers. Default: Asynchronous. See<br>also ResetType.          |
| Reset Asserted Level | Specifies whether the asserted (active) level<br>of reset input signal is active-high (1) or<br>active-low (0). Default: Active-high. See also<br>ResetAssertedLevel. |
| Clock Input Port     | Specifies the name for the clock input port in generated HDL code. Default: clk. See also ClockInputPort.   |
| Clock Enable Port    | Specifies the name for the clock enable<br>input port in generated HDL code. Default:<br>clk_enable. See also ClockEnableInputPort.                                   |
| Reset Input Port     | Specifies the name for the reset input port in<br>generated HDL code. Default: reset. See also<br>ResetInputPort.   |

#### **Additional Settings : General Pane**

This pane contains settings related to file naming for generated code, and comment generation.

| Additional Settings      |          |                            |           |
|--------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-----------|
| General Ports Adva       | nced     |                            |           |
| General                  |          |                            |           |
| Comment in header:       |          |                            |           |
| Verilog file extension:  | .v       | VHDL file extension:       | .vhd      |
| Entry conflict postfix:  | _entity  | Package postfix:           | _pkg      |
| Reserved word postfix:   | _rsvd    | Split entity and arc       | hitecture |
| Clocked process postfix: | _process | Split entity file postfix: | _entity   |
|                          |          | Split arch file postfix:   | _arch     |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |
|                          |          |                            |           |

| Option                  | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Comment in header       | Text entered in this field generates a comment<br>line in the header of generated model and test<br>bench files. See also UserComment.   |
| Verilog file extension  | This field specifies the file name extension for<br>generated Verilog files. The default extensions<br>is .v. <b>Verilog file extension</b> is enabled<br>when the target language is Verilog. See also<br>VerilogFileExtension. |
| VHDL file extension     | This field specifies the file name extension for<br>generated VHDL files. The default extensions<br>is .vhd. <b>VHDL file extension</b> is enabled<br>when the target language is VHDL. See also<br>VHDLFileExtension.           |
| Entity conflict postfix | The string entered in this field is used to<br>resolve duplicate VHDL entity or Verilog<br>module names in generated code. The default<br>is _entity. See also EntityConflictPostfix.  |

| Option                        | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Package postfix               | The string entered in this field is appended to<br>the model or subsystem name to form the name<br>of a VHDL package file. <b>Package postfix</b> is<br>enabled when the target language is VHDL.<br>The default is _pkg. See also PackagePostfix.   |
| Reserved word postfix         | The string entered in this field is appended<br>to value names, postfix values, or labels in<br>generated code that conflict with VHDL or<br>Verilog reserved words. The default is _rsvd.<br>See also ReservedWordPostfix.  |
| Split entity and architecture | <b>Split entity and architecture</b> is enabled<br>when the target language is VHDL. When this<br>option is deselected (the default), VHDL entity<br>and architecture code is written to a single<br>VHDL file. When this option is selected VHDL<br>entity and architecture definitions are written<br>to separate files. See also SplitEntityArch. |
| Split entity file postfix     | <b>Split entity file postfix</b> is enabled when<br><b>Split entity and architecture</b> is selected.<br>The string entered in this field is appended<br>to the model name to form the name of a<br>generated VHDL entity file. The default is<br>_entity. See also SplitEntityFilePostfix.  |

| Option                  | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Split arch file postfix | <b>Split arch file postfix</b> is enabled when<br><b>Split entity and architecture</b> is selected.<br>The string entered in this field is appended<br>to the model or subsystem name to form the<br>name of the file containing the model's VHDL<br>architecture. The default is _arch. See also<br>SplitArchFilePostfix. |
| Clocked process postfix | Specifies a string to append to HDL clock<br>process names. Simulink HDL Coder uses<br>process blocks for register operations. The<br>label for each block drives from a register name<br>and the postfix. The default is _process. See<br>also ClockProcessPostfix.   |

#### Additional Settings : Ports Pane

This pane contains options related to input, output, and clock enable output ports.

| Additional Settings       |                  |  |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|
| General Ports Advanced    |                  |  |
| Ports                     |                  |  |
| Input data type:          | std_logic_vector |  |
| Output data type:         | std_logic_vector |  |
| Clock enable output port: | ce_out           |  |
|                           |                  |  |
|                           |                  |  |
|                           |                  |  |
|                           |                  |  |
|                           |                  |  |
|                           |                  |  |
| <u> </u>                  |                  |  |

| Option                   | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Input data type          | Specifies the HDL data type for the model's input ports. For VHDL, the options are   |
|                          | <ul> <li>std_logic_vector: Specifies VHDL type<br/>STD_LOGIC_VECTOR.</li> </ul>  |
|                          | • signed/unsigned: Specifies VHDL type SIGNED or UNSIGNED.   |
|                          | <b>Input data type</b> is disabled when the target language is Verilog. In generated Verilog code, the data type for all ports is wire.  |
|                          | See also InputType.  |
| Output data type         | Specifies the HDL data type for the model's output ports. For VHDL, the options are  |
|                          | <ul> <li>std_logic_vector: Specifies VHDL type<br/>STD_LOGIC_VECTOR.</li> </ul>  |
|                          | • signed/unsigned: Specifies VHDL type SIGNED or UNSIGNED.   |
|                          | <b>Output data type</b> is disabled when the target language is Verilog. In generated Verilog code, the data type for all ports is wire. |
|                          | See also OutputType.   |
| Clock enable output port | Specifies the name for the generated clock<br>enable output. The default is ce_out.See also<br>ClockEnableOutputPort.                    |

#### Additional Settings : Advanced Pane

This pane contains advanced settings related to detailed characteristics of generated code. Most of these options are specific to either VHDL or Verilog.



| Option                                  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Represent constant values by aggregates | <b>Represent constant values by aggregates</b><br>is enabled when the target language is VHDL.<br>When this option is deselected (the default),<br>the coder represents constants less than 32 bits<br>as scalars and constants greater than or equal<br>to 32 bits as aggregates. When this option<br>is selected, all constants are represented as<br>aggregates. See also UseAggregatesForConst. |
| Use "rising edge" for registers         | <b>Use "rising edge" for registers</b> is enabled<br>when the target language is VHDL. When<br>this option is deselected (the default),<br>generated code checks for clock events when<br>operating on registers. When this option<br>is selected, generated code uses the VHDL<br>rising_edge function to check for rising<br>edges when operating on registers. See also<br>UseRisingEdge.        |

| Option                             | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Loop unrolling                     | <b>Loop unrolling</b> is enabled when the target<br>language is VHDL. When this option is<br>deselected (the default), FOR and GENERATE<br>loops are included in generated VHDL code.<br>When this option is deselected, are unrolled<br>and omitted from generated VHDL code. See<br>also LoopUnrolling.   |
| Cast before sum                    | When this option is selected (the default),<br>operands in addition and subtraction<br>operations are type cast to the result type<br>before executing the operation. When this<br>option is selected, operand types are preserved<br>during addition and subtraction operations<br>and the result is then converted to the desired<br>result type. See also CastBeforeSum.   |
| Use Verilog "timescale directives" | Use Verilog "timescale directives"<br>is enabled when the target language is<br>Verilog. When this option is selected<br>(the default), the coder uses compiler<br>'timescale directives in generated Verilog<br>code. When this option is deselected, the<br>coder suppresses compiler 'timescale<br>directives in generated Verilog code.<br>This setting does not affect<br>the generated test bench.<br>See also UseVerilogTimescale. |

| Option                      | Description   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Inline VHDL configuration   | <b>Inline VHDL configuration</b> is enabled when<br>the target language is VHDL. When this option<br>is selected (the default), VHDL configurations<br>are generated in any file that instantiates a<br>component. When this option is deselected,<br>generated configurations are suppressed and<br>user-defined configurations are required.See<br>also InlineConfigurations. |
| Concatenate type safe zeros | When this option is selected, (the default), the code uses the type-safe syntax, '0' & '0', for concatenated zeros. Typically, this syntax is preferred. See also SafeZeroConcat.   |

## **EDA Tool Scripts Pane**

The **EDA Tool Scripts** pane (shown in the following figure) lets you set options that control generation of script files for third-party electronic design automation (EDA) tools.

See Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" for a detailed description of tool script generation.

| 🆄 Configuration Parameters | : sfir_fixed/Config  | uration (Active) |    |        |      | ×     |
|----------------------------|--|------------------|----|--------|------|-------|
|                            | E sfir_fixed/Configu<br>EDA Tool Scripts<br>Generate EDA st<br>Compilation script<br>Simulation script<br>Synthesis script |                  | ž  |        |      |       |
|                            |  |                  | ок | Cancel | Help | Apply |

The **Generate EDA scripts** option controls the generation of script files. This option is selected by default. If you want to disable script generation, deselect this option.

The list on the left of the **EDA Tool Scripts** pane lets you select from several categories of options. Select a category and set the options as desired. The categories are

- **Compilation script**. Options related to customizing scripts for compilation of generated VHDL or Verilog code. See "EDA Tool Scripts:Compilation Script Pane" on page 3-21 for further information.
- **Simulation script**. Options related to customizing scripts for HDL simulators. See "EDA Tool Scripts:Simulation Script Pane" on page 3-22 for further information.
- **Synthesis script**. Options related to customizing scripts for synthesis tools. See "EDA Tool Scripts:Synthesis Script Pane" on page 3-24 for further information.

#### **EDA Tool Scripts:Compilation Script Pane**

The following figure shows the **Compilation script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter   | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  | × |
|---|--|---|
| Select:   | EDA Tool Scripts   | _ |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Oata Validity     Type Conversion     Oata Validity     Work and the series of the | Generate EDA scripts         Compilation script         Simulation script         Synthesis script         Compile initialization:         Vib work\n         Compile command for VHDL:         vcom %s %s\n         Compile command for Verilog:         vlog %s %s\n         Compile termination:         Image: Simulation script |   |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |   |

The following table summarizes the **Compilation script** options.

| Option and Default           | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Compile file postfix'        | Postfix string appended to the filter name or                                    |
| '_compile.do'                | test bench name to form the script file name.<br>See also HDLCompileFilePostfix. |
| Name: Compile initialization | Format string passed to fprintf to write   |
| Default:'vlib work\n'        | the Init section of the compilation script.<br>See alsoHDLCompileInit.           |

| Option and Default  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Name: <b>Compile command for VHDL</b><br>Default: 'vcom %s %s\n'              | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>Cmd section of the compilation script for VHDL<br>files. The two arguments are the contents of<br>the <b>Simulator flags</b> option and the filename<br>of the current entity or module. To omit the<br>flags, set <b>Simulator flags</b> to '' (the default).<br>See also HDLCompileVHDLCmd.       |
| Name: <b>Compile command for</b><br><b>Verilog</b><br>Default: 'vlog %s %s\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>Cmd section of the compilation script for Verilog<br>files. The two arguments are the contents of<br>the <b>Simulator flags</b> option and the filename<br>of the current entity or module. To omit the<br>flags, set <b>Simulator flags</b> to '' (the default).<br>See also HDLCompileVerilogCmd. |
| Name: <b>Compile termination</b><br>Default: ' '                              | Format string passed to fprintf to write the termination portion of the compilation script. See also HDLCompileTerm.  |

## **EDA Tool Scripts:Simulation Script Pane**

The following figure shows the **Simulation script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter   | 's: sfir_fixed/Config   | uration (Active)   |
|---|---|--|
| Select:   | EDA Tool Scripts  |  |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Dptimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Costant Code     Debug     Interface     HDL Coder     Global Settings     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | Generate EDA s<br>Compilation script<br>Simulation script<br>Synthesis script | Simulation file postfix:       sim.do         Simulation initialization:       onbreak resume\nonerror resume\n         onbreak resume\nonerror resume\n       simulation command:         Simulation command:       simulation waveform viewing command:         add wave sim %s\n       simulation termination:         Finulation termination:       run -all\n |
|   |   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |

The following table summarizes the **Simulation script** options.

| Option and Default                           | Description   |
|--|---|
| <b>Simulation file postfix</b><br>'_sim.do'  | Postfix string appended to the filter name or test<br>bench name to form the script file name. See also<br>HDLSimFilePostfix. |
| <b>Simulation initialization</b><br>Default: | Format string passed to fprintf to write the initialization section of the simulation script. See also HDLSimInit.            |
| ['onbreak resume\nonerror resume\n']         |   |
| Simulation command                           | Format string passed to fprintf to write the  |
| Default: 'vsim work.%s\n'                    | simulation command. The implicit argument<br>is the top-level module or entity name.<br>See also HDLSimCmd.                   |

| Option and Default   | Description   |
|--|---|
| Simulation waveform viewing<br>command<br>Default: 'add wave sim:%s\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the simulation<br>script waveform viewing command. The top-level<br>module or entity signal names are implicit arguments.<br>See also HDLSimViewWaveCmd. |
| <b>Simulation termination</b><br>Default: 'run -all\n'                 | Format string passed to fprintf to write<br>the Term portion of the simulation script<br>See also HDLSimTerm.   |

#### EDA Tool Scripts:Synthesis Script Pane

The following figure shows the **Synthesis script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🌺 Configuration Parameter   | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  | × |
|---|--|---|
| Select  | EDA Tool Scripts   | _ |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Oata Validity     Type Conversion     Oata Validity     Ornectivity     Connectivity     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug     Interface     HDL Coder     Global Settings     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | ✓ Generate EDA scripts         Compilation script       Synthesis file postfix: _synplify.tcl         Synthesis script       Synthesis initialization:         Synthesis script       project -new %s.prj\n         Synthesis command:       add_file %s\n         Synthesis termination:       set_option -technology VIRTEX2\nset_option -part XC2V500\nset_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\nset_option -frequency auto\nproject -run synthesis\n |   |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |   |

The following table summarizes the **Synthesis script** options.

| Option Name and Default   | Description   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Name: <b>Synthesis initialization</b><br>Default: 'project -new %s.prj\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Init<br>section of the synthesis script. The default string is<br>a synthesis project creation command. The implicit<br>argument is the top-level module or entity name.<br>See also HDLSynthInit. |  |  |
| Name: Synthesis command   | Format string passed to fprintf to write  |  |  |
| Default: 'add_file %s\n'  | the Cmd section of the synthesis script. The argument is the filename of the entity or module. See also HDLSimCmd.  |  |  |
| Name: Synthesis termination   | Format string passed to fprintf to write  |  |  |
| Default:  | the Term section of the synthesis script.<br>See also HDLSynthCmd.  |  |  |
| ['set_option -technology VIRTEX2\n',                                      |   |  |  |
| 'set_option -part XC2V500\n',   |   |  |  |
| 'set_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\n',                                 |   |  |  |
| 'set_option -frequency auto\n',   |   |  |  |
| 'project -run synthesis\n']   |   |  |  |

## **Test Bench Pane**

The **Test Bench** pane lets you set options that determine characteristics of generated test bench code.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter   | rs: sfir_fixed/Configurat   | tion (Active) |    |        |                   |       | x |
|---|---|---------------|----|--------|-------------------|-------|---|
| Select  | Test bench  |               |    |        |                   |       | - |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Model Referencing   | Test bench name postfix<br>Force clock<br>Clock high time (ns):<br>Clock low time (ns):<br>Force clock enable<br>Force reset<br>Hold time (ns): |               |    |        |                   |       |   |
| House Hereiencing House Hereiencing House Hereiencing House Hereiencing House House Hereiencing House House Hereiencing House House Hereiencing House Herei |   |               |    |        | ienerate Test Ben | ch    | × |
|   |   |               | ОК | Cancel | Help              | Apply |   |

| Option or Control       | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Generate Test Bench     | Initiates test bench code generation for the<br>subsystem selected in the <b>Generate HDL for</b><br>menu. If you do not select a subsystem from<br>the top (root) level of the current Simulink<br>model in the <b>Generate HDL for</b> menu, the<br><b>Generate Test Bench</b> button is disabled. |
|                         | See also makehdltb.  |
| Test bench name postfix | Specifies a suffix appended to the test<br>bench name. The default is _tb. See also<br>TestBenchPostFix.   |
| Force clock             | When this option is selected (the default), the test bench forces the clock input signals. See also ForceClock.  |

| Option or Control  | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| Clock high time    | This option is enabled when <b>Force clock</b> is<br>selected. Specify the period, in nanoseconds,<br>during which a test bench drives clock input<br>signals high. The default is 5 ns. See also<br>ClockHighTime.  |
| Clock low time     | This option is enabled when <b>Force clock</b> is<br>selected. Specify the period, in nanoseconds,<br>during which a test bench drives clock input<br>signals low. The default is 5 ns. See also<br>ClockLowTime.  |
| Force clock enable | When this option is selected (the default), the test bench forces the clock enable input signals to active high (1) or active low (0), depending on the setting of the clock enable input value. See also ForceClockEnable.  |
| Force reset        | When this option is selected (the default), the test bench forces the reset input signals. See also ForceReset.  |
| Hold time (ns)     | This option specifies a hold time, in<br>nanoseconds, for input signals and forced reset<br>input signals. The default is 2 ns. During the<br>hold interval, the model's data input signals<br>and forced reset input signals are held past the<br>clock rising edge. See also HoldTime. |

# Code Generation Control Files

Overview of Control Files (p. 4-2)

Structure of a Control File (p. 4-5)

Code Generation Control Objects and Methods (p. 4-7)

Using Control Files in the Code Generation Process (p. 4-13)

Specifying Block Implementations and Parameters in the Control File (p. 4-17)

Summary of Block Implementations (p. 4-27)

Motivation for code generation control files; control file statement types; selectable HDL block implementations and implementation mappings

Required elements of a control file

Instantiating a code generation control object; code generation control object methods that you can invoke in a control file

How to create a control file, attach or detach it from your model, and invoke it during code generation

How block implementations and implementation parameters are specified in a control file; how to use the hdlnewforeach function to generate selection/action statements; summary of blocks with multiple implementations

Summary of implementations for all supported blocks

# **Overview of Control Files**

- "Selectable Block Implementations" on page 4-3
- "Implementation Mappings" on page 4-3
- "Control File Demo" on page 4-3

*Code generation control files* (referred to in this document as *control files*) let you extend the HDL code generation process and direct its details. A control file is an M-file that you attach to your model, using either the makehdl command or the Simulink Configuration Parameters dialog box. You do not need to know any internal details of the code generation process to use a control file.

In the current release, control files support the following statement types:

• Selection / action statements provide a general framework for the application of different types of transformations to selected model components. Selection/action statements *select* a group of blocks within your model, and specify an *action* to be executed when code is generated for each block in the selected group.

Selection criteria include block type and location within the model. For example, you might select all built-in Gain blocks at or below the level of a certain subsystem within your model.

A typical action applied to such a group of blocks would be to direct the code generator to execute a specific *block implementation method* when generating HDL code for the selected blocks. For example, for Gain blocks, you might choose a method that generates code that is optimized for speed or chip area.

- Property setting statements let you
  - Select the model or subsystem from which code is to be generated.
  - Set the values of code generation properties to be passed to the code generator. The properties and syntax are the same as those used for the makehdl command.
  - Set up default or template HDL code generation settings for your organization.

## **Selectable Block Implementations**

Selection/action statements provide a general framework that lets you define how Simulink HDL Coder acts upon selected model components. The current release supports one such action: execution of block implementation methods.

Block implementation methods are code generator components that emit HDL code for the blocks in a Simulink model. This document refers to block implementation methods as *block implementations* or simply *implementations*.

Simulink HDL Coder provides at least one block implementation for every supported block. This is called the *default implementation*. In addition, Simulink HDL Coder provides selectable alternate block implementations for certain block types. Each implementation is optimized for different characteristics, such as speed or chip area. For example, you can choose Gain block implementations that use canonic signed digit (CSD) techniques (reducing area), or use a default implementation that retains multipliers.

# **Implementation Mappings**

Control files let you specify one or more *implementation mappings* that control how HDL code is to be generated for a specified group of blocks within the model. An implementation mapping is an association between a selected block or set of blocks within the model and a block implementation.

To select the set of blocks to be mapped to a block implementation, you specify

- A modelscope: a Simulink block path (which could incorporate an entire model or sublevel of the model, or a specific subsystem or block)
- A blocktype: a Simulink block type that corresponds to the selected block implementation

During code generation, each defined modelscope is searched for instances of the associated blocktype. For each such block instance encountered, the code generator uses the selected block implementation.

# **Control File Demo**

The "Getting Started with Control Files" demo illustrates the use of simple control files to define implementation mappings and generate Verilog

code. The demo is located in the **Demos** pane on the left of the MATLAB Help browser. To run the demo, select **Simulink > Simulink HDL Coder > Getting Started with Control Files** in the **Demos** pane. Then follow the demo instructions.

# Structure of a Control File

The required elements for a code generation control file are as follows:

• A control file is an M-file that implements a single function, which is invoked during the code generation process.

The function must instantiate a *code generation control object*, set its properties, and return the object to the code generator.

Setting up a code generation control object requires the use of a small number of methods, as described in "Code Generation Control Objects and Methods" on page 4-7. You do not need to know internal details of the code generation control object or the class to which it belongs.

The object is constructed using the hdlnewcontrol function. The argument to hdlnewcontrol is the name of the control file itself. Use the MATLAB mfilename function to pass in the file name, as shown in the following example.

```
function c = dct8config
c = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
% Set target language for Verilog.
c.set('TargetLanguage','Verilog');
% Set top-level subsystem from which code is generated.
c.generateHDLFor('dct8_fixed/OneD_DCT8');
```

- Following the constructor call, your code will invoke methods of the code generation control object. The previous example calls the set and generateHDLFor methods. These and all other public methods of the object are discussed in "Code Generation Control Objects and Methods" on page 4-7.
- Your control file must be attached to your Simulink model before code generation, as described in "Using Control Files in the Code Generation Process" on page 4-13. The interface between the code generator and your attached control file is automatic.
- A control file is normally located in either the current working directory, or a directory that is in the MATLAB path.

If you want to locate a control file elsewhere, you should specify an explicit path to the control file when you attach it to your model.

However, your control files should not be located within the MATLAB directory tree because they could be overwritten by subsequent MATLAB installations.

# **Code Generation Control Objects and Methods**

Code generation control objects are instances of the class slhdlcoder.ConfigurationContainer. This section describes the methods of that class that you can use in your control files. Other methods of this class are for MathWorks internal use only. The methods are described in the following sections:

- "hdlnewcontrol" on page 4-7
- "forEach" on page 4-7
- "forAll" on page 4-11
- "set" on page 4-11
- "generateHDLFor" on page 4-11

## hdlnewcontrol

The hdlnewcontrol function constructs a code generation control object. The syntax is

```
object = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
```

The argument to hdlnewcontrol is the name of the control file itself. Use the MATLAB mfilename function to pass in the file name string.

## forEach

This method establishes an implementation mapping between an HDL block implementation and a selected block or set of blocks within the model. The syntax is

The forEach method selects a set of Simulink blocks (modelscopes) that is searched, during code generation, for instances of a specified type of block (blocktype). Code generation for each block instance encountered uses the HDL block implementation specified by the implementation parameter. **Note** You can use the hdlnewforeach function to generate forEach method calls for insertion into your control files. See "Generating Selection/Action Statements with the hdlnewforeach Function" on page 4-17 for more information.

| Argument    | Туре             | Description   |
|-------------|------------------|---|
| modelscopes | String or cell   | Strings defining one or more Simulink paths:  |
|             | array of strings | {'path1' 'path2''pathN'}  |
|             |                  | Each such path defines a modelscope: a set<br>of Simulink blocks that participate in an<br>implementation mapping. The selected set<br>of blocks in a modelscope could include the<br>entire model, all blocks at a specified level of<br>the model, or a specific block or subsystem. A<br>path terminating in a wildcard character ('*')<br>indicates inclusion of all blocks at or below the<br>model level specified by the path. Supported<br>syntax for modelscope paths is |
|             |                  | <ul> <li>'model/subsyslevel/block': a specific<br/>block within a specific level of the model</li> </ul>  |
|             |                  | • 'model/subsyslevel/subsystem': a specific subsystem block within a specific level of the model  |
|             |                  | • 'model/subsyslevel/*': any block within a specific level of the model   |
|             |                  | See also "Resolution of modelscopes" on page 4-10.  |

The following table summarizes the arguments to the forEach method.

| Argument                        | Туре                  | Description   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| blocktype                       | String                | Simulink block specification that identifies the<br>type of block that is to be mapped to the HDL<br>block implementation. The syntax for a block<br>specification is the same as that used in the<br>Simulink add-block command. For built-in<br>Simulink blocks, the blocktype is of the form<br>'built-in/blockname' |
|                                 |                       | For other blocks, blocktype must include the library containing the block, for example:   |
|                                 |                       | 'dsparch4/Digital Filter'   |
|                                 |                       | If the block is contained in a sublibrary, the full path from the top-level library must be included.   |
| block_parms                     | Cell array of strings | Reserved for future use; not supported in the current release. Pass in an empty cell array ({}) as placeholder.   |
| implementation                  | String                | An HDL block implementation to be used in<br>code generation for all blocks that meet the<br>modelscope and blocktype search criteria.<br>An implementation is specified in the form<br>package.class, for example:   |
|                                 |                       | hdldefaults.GainMultHDLEmission   |
|                                 |                       | "Specifying Block Implementations and<br>Parameters in the Control File" on page 4-17<br>lists available implementations.   |
| <pre>implementation_parms</pre> | Cell array of strings | Reserved for future use; not supported in the current release. Pass in an empty cell array ({}) as placeholder.   |

#### **Resolution of modelscopes**

A possible conflict exists in the forEach specifications in the following example:

```
% 1. Use default (multipliers) Gain block implementation
% for one specific Gain block within OneD_DCT8 subsystem
c.forEach('dct8_fixed/OneD_DCT8/Gain14',...
        'built-in/Gain', {},...
        'hdldefaults.GainMultHDLEmission');
% 2. Use factored CSD Gain block implementation
% for all Gain blocks at or below level of OneD_DCT8 subsystem.
c.forEach('dct8_fixed/OneD_DCT8/*',...
        'built-in/Gain', {},...
        'hdldefaults.GainFCSDHDLEmission');
```

The first forEach call defines an implementation mapping for a specific block within the subsystem OneD\_DCT8. The second forEach call defines a different implementation mapping for all blocks within or below the subsystem OneD\_DCT8.

Simulink HDL Coder resolves such ambiguities by always giving higher priority to the more specific modelscope. In the example, the Gain14 block uses the hdldefaults.GainMultHDLEmission implementation, while all other blocks within or below the subsystem OneD\_DCT8 use the hdldefaults.GainFCSDHDLEmission implementation.

Five levels of modelscope priority from most specific (1) to least specific (5) are defined:

- 1 A/B/C/block
  2 A/B/C/\*
- 3 A/B/\*
- 4 \*

5 Unspecified. Use MathWorks default implementation.

# forAll

This method is a shorthand form of forEach. Only one modelscope path is specified. The modelscope argument is specified as a string (not a cell array) and it is implicitly terminated with '/\*'. The syntax is

All other arguments are the same as those described for "forEach" on page 4-7.

### set

The set method sets one or more code generation properties. The syntax is

```
object.set('PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
```

The argument list specifies one or more code generation options as property/value pairs. You can set any of the code generation properties documented in Chapter 12, "Properties — Alphabetical List", *except* the HDLControlFiles property.

**Note** If you specify the same property in both your control file and your makehdl command, the property will be set to the value specified in the control file.

Likewise, when generating code via the GUI, if you specify the same property in both your control file and the **HDL Coder** options panes, the property will be set to the value specified in the control file.

## generateHDLFor

This method selects the model or subsystem from which code is to be generated. The syntax is

```
object.generateHDLFor('simulinkpath')
```

The argument is a string specifying the full Simulink path to the model or subsystem from which code is to be generated.

Use of this method is optional. You can specify the same parameter in the **Generate HDL for** menu in the **HDL Coder** pane of the Configuration Parameters dialog box, or in a makehol command.

# **Using Control Files in the Code Generation Process**

- "Creating a Control File" on page 4-13
- "Associating an Existing Control File with Your Model" on page 4-14
- "Detaching a Control File from Your Model" on page 4-16

# **Creating a Control File**

You can create a control file manually using the MATLAB editor or some other text editor. See "Structure of a Control File" on page 4-5 to make sure your files are set up correctly.

You can also use the GUI to save your current Simulink HDL Coder settings to a control file, as follows:

- **1** Open the Configuration Parameters dialog box and select the **HDL Coder** options pane.
- 2 In the Code generation control file subpane, click the Save button.
- **3** A standard file dialog box opens. Navigate to the directory where you want to save the control file. Then enter the file name and save the file.
- **4** The file name of the control file is now displayed in the **File name** field, as shown in the following figure.

| 😺 Configuration Paramete  | s: sfir_fixed/Configuration  |
|---|--|
| Select:   | - Code generation control file   |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Optimization     Sample Time     Opta Validity     Opta Validity | File name:       sfir_fixed_control         Target       Save         Generate HDL for:       sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Language:       vhd         Directory:       hdlsrc         Browse         Code generate HDL code         © Generate HDL code         © Display generated model only         © Generate HDL and display generated model |
|   | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker   |
|   | Generate   |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |

- **5** The control file is now linked to your model and will be used when code is generated. Save the model if you want the control file linkage to persist in future MATLAB sessions with your model.
- **6** You can now edit the control file, for example, adding ForEach statements to define block implementation bindings, etc.

## Associating an Existing Control File with Your Model

A control file must be associated with your model before you can use the control file in code generation.

If you are generating code via makeholl or makeholltb from the MATLAB command prompt, use the HDLControlFiles property to specify the location of the control file. In the following example, the control file is assumed to be located on the MATLAB path or in the current working directory, and to have the default file name extension .m.

```
makehdl('HDLControlFiles', {'dct8config'});
```

If you are using the GUI to generate code, specify the location of the control file as follows:

- **1** Open the Configuration Parameters dialog box and select the **HDL Coder** options pane.
- 2 In the Code generation control file subpane, click the Load button.
- **3** A standard file dialog box opens. Navigate to the desired control file, and select it.
- **4** The file name of the selected control file is displayed in the **File name** field, as shown in the following figure.

| 🙀 Configuration Parameters  | sfir_fixed/Configuration   | x |
|---|--|---|
| Select:   | -Code generation control file  |   |
| Solver     Optimization     Optimiz | File name:       D:\Applications\Sim_HDL_Coder_Bash\toolbox\hdlcoder\hdlcoderdemos\stir_fixed_control.m         Target         Generate HDL for:       stir_fixed/symmetric_fir         Language:       vhdl         Directory:       hdlsrc         Browse         Code generation output         © Generate HDL code         C Display generated model only         © Generate HDL and display generated model |   |
|   | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker   | • |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply   |   |

- 5 Click Apply.
- **6** The control file is now linked to your model and will be used when code is generated. Save the model if you want the control file linkage to persist in future MATLAB sessions with your model.

## **Detaching a Control File from Your Model**

The quickest (and recommended) way to detach a control file from your model is to click the **Restore Factory Defaults** button. This button removes the control file linkage, clears the **File name** field, and resets all Simulink HDL Coder properties to their default settings.

**Note Restore Factory Defaults** resets all HDL code generation settings. This action cannot be cancelled or undone. To recover previous settings, you must close the model without saving it, and then reopen it.

Any of the following actions also detach a control file from a model:

- Attaching another control file, using either the **Load** button or a call to makehdl
- Closing the model after attaching a control file, without saving the model
- Clearing the HDLControlFiles property by passing in a null file name argument to makehdl, as in this example:

```
makehdl(gcb, 'HDLControlFiles', {''});
```

# Specifying Block Implementations and Parameters in the Control File

- "Generating Selection/Action Statements with the hdlnewforeach Function" on page 4-17
- "Blocks with Multiple Implementations" on page 4-21

Simulink HDL Coder provides a default HDL block implementation for all supported blocks. In addition, Simulink HDL Coder provides selectable alternate HDL block implementations for several block types. Using selection/action statements (forEach or forAll method calls) in a control file, you can specify the block implementation to be applied to all blocks of a given type (within a specific modelscope) during code generation. (See "Code Generation Control Objects and Methods" on page 4-7.)

You select HDL block implementations by specifying an implementation package and class, in the form package.class. Pass in the package.class specification to the implementation parameter of a forEach or forAll call, as in the following example.

```
config.forEach('simplevectorsum/vsum/Sum',...
'built-in/Sum',{},...
'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission',{});
```

Given the package.class specification, Simulink HDL Coder will call the appropriate code generation method. You do not need to know any internal details of the implementation classes.

## Generating Selection/Action Statements with the hdlnewforeach Function

Determining the block path, type, and implementation package.class specification for a large number of blocks in a model can be time-consuming. To help you create selection/action statements in your control files, Simulink HDL Coder provides the hdlnewforeach function. Given a selection of one or more blocks from your model, hdlnewforeach returns the following for each selected block, as string data in the MATLAB workspace:

- A forEach call coded with the correct modelscope , blocktype, and default implementation arguments for the block
- (Optional) A cell array of strings enumerating the available implementations for the block, in package.class form

Having generated this information, you can copy and paste the strings into your control file.

#### hdlnewforeach Example

This example uses hdlnewforeach to construct a forEach call that specifies a nondefault implementation for a Sum block within the sfir\_fixed demo model. To do this:

- In the MATLAB window, select File > New > M-File. The MATLAB editor opens an empty M-file.
- **2** Create a skeletal control file by entering the following code into the M-file window.

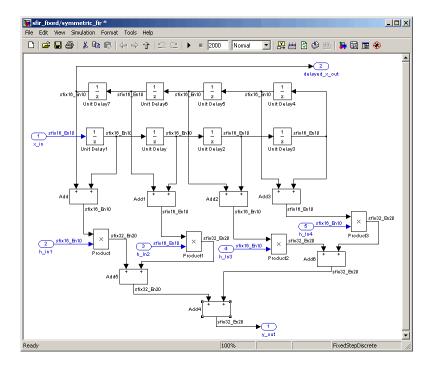
```
function c = newforeachexamp
c = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
% Set top-level subsystem from which code is generated.
c.generateHDLFor('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir');
% INSERT FOREACH CALL BELOW THIS LINE.
```

- 3 Save the file as newforeachexamp.m.
- 4 Open the sfir\_fixed demo model.
- 5 Before invoking hdlnewforeach, you must run checkhdl or makehdl to build in-memory information about the model. At the MATLAB command prompt, run checkhdl on the symmetric\_fir subsystem, as shown in the following code example.

```
checkhdl('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir')
### Starting HDL Check.
### HDL Check Complete with 0 errors, warnings and messages.
```

4-18

- 6 Close the checkdl report window, and activate the sfir\_fixed model window.
- 7 Right-click thesymmetric\_fir subsystem and select Look Under Mask from the context menu.
- 8 In the symmetric\_fir subsystem window, select the Add4 block, as shown in the following figure.



Now you are ready to generate a forEach call for the selected block. Do this as follows:

**1** Type the following command at the MATLAB prompt.

```
[cmd,impl] = hdlnewforeach(gcb)
```

**2** The command returns the following results.

{3x1 cell}

```
cmd =
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'built-in/Sum', {},...
'hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission', {});
impl =
```

The first return value, cmd, contains the generated forEach call. The forEach call specifies the default implementation for the Sum block: hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission.

**3** The second return value, impl, is a cell array containing three strings representing the available implementations for the Sum block. The following example lists the contents of the impl array.

```
impl{1}
ans =
    'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission'
    'hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission'
    'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission'
```

See the table "Built-In/Sum of Elements on page 4-24" for information about these implementations.

**4** Copy the three lines of forEach code from the MATLAB Command window and paste them into the end of your newforeachexamp.m file, as shown in the following example.

```
% INSERT FOREACH CALL BELOW THIS LINE.
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'built-in/Sum', {},...
'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission', {});
```

- 5 Copy the nondefault implementation string, 'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission' (including quotes) from the MATLAB Command window and paste it into your control file, replacing the default implementation string, 'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission'.
- **6** Save the file.
- 7 The following code listing shows the complete control file.

```
function c = newforeachexamp
c = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
% Set target language for Verilog.
c.set('TargetLanguage','Verilog');
% Set top-level subsystem from which code is generated.
c.generateHDLFor('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir');
% INSERT FOREACH CALLS HERE.
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'built-in/Sum', {},...
'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission', {});
```

**Note** For convenience, hdlnewforeach supports a more abbreviated syntax than that used in the previous example. See the hdlnewforeach reference page.

# **Blocks with Multiple Implementations**

The tables in this section summarize the block types that have multiple implementations. The "Implementations" column gives the package.class specification you should use in your control files. The "Description" column summarizes the trade-offs involved in choosing different implementations.

Simulink HDL Coder provides a default HDL block implementation for all supported blocks. If you want to use the default implementation, you do not usually need to specify it explicitly in a control file. However, the following example illustrates a situation in which the default implementation is specified as an exception for one particular block. % 1. Use default (multipliers) Gain block implementation % for one specific Gain block within OneD\_DCT8 subsystem. c.forEach('dct8\_fixed/OneD\_DCT8/Gain14',... 'built-in/Gain', {},... 'hdldefaults.GainMultHDLEmission'); % 2. Use factored CSD Gain block implementation % or all other Gain blocks at or below % level of OneD\_DCT8 subsystem. c.forEach('dct8\_fixed/OneD\_DCT8/\*',... 'built-in/Gain', {},... 'hdldefaults.GainFCSDHDLEmission');

#### Built-In/Gain

| Implementations                 | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.GainMultHDLEmission | <i>Default.</i> This implementation retains multiplier operations in HDL code generated by the Gain block.  |
| hdldefaults.GainCSDHDLEmission  | This implementation decreases the area used<br>by the model while maintaining or increasing<br>clock speed, using canonic signed digit (CSD)<br>techniques. CSD replaces multiplier operations<br>with shift and add operations. CSD minimizes<br>the number of addition operations required for<br>constant multiplication by representing binary<br>numbers with a minimum count of nonzero digits. |
| hdldefaults.GainFCSDHDLEmission | This implementation lets you achieve a greater<br>area reduction than CSD, at the cost of decreasing<br>clock speed. This implementation uses factored<br>CSD techniques, which replace multiplier<br>operations with shift and add operations on prime<br>factors of the operands.   |

### Built-In/Lookup Table

| Implementations                    | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.LookupHDLEmission      | Default. Nonhierarchical lookup table.  |
| hdldefaults.LookupHDLInstantiation | This implementation generates an additional<br>level of HDL hierarchy (which does not exist in<br>the Simulink model) for the lookup table. |

#### Signal Processing Blockset/Minimum

| Implementation                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.MinMaxTreeHDLEmission    | <i>Default</i> . This implementation is large and slow but has minimal latency.   |
| hdldefaults.MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission | This implementation is optimized for latency * area, with medium speed. See "A Note on Cascade Implementations" on page 4-26. |

### Signal Processing Blockset/Maximum

| Implementation                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.MinMaxTreeHDLEmission    | <i>Default</i> . This implementation is large and slow but has minimal latency.   |
| hdldefaults.MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission | This implementation is optimized for latency *<br>area, with medium speed. See "A Note on Cascade<br>Implementations" on page 4-26. |

#### Built-In/MinMax

| Implementation                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.MinMaxTreeHDLEmission    | <i>Default</i> . This implementation is large and slow but has minimal latency.   |
| hdldefaults.MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission | This implementation is optimized for latency * area, with medium speed. See "A Note on Cascade Implementations" on page 4-26. |

## **Built-In/Product of Elements**

| Implementation                        | Description   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.ProductLinearHDLEmission  | <i>Default.</i> Generates a chain of N operations (multipliers) for N inputs.   |
| hdldefaults.ProductTreeHDLEmission    | This implementation has minimal latency but<br>is large and slow. It generates a tree-shaped<br>structure of multipliers.   |
| hdldefaults.ProductCascadeHDLEmission | This implementation optimizes latency * area<br>and is faster than the tree implementation.<br>It computes partial products and cascades<br>multipliers. See "A Note on Cascade<br>Implementations" on page 4-26. |

## **Built-In/Sum of Elements**

| Implementation                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission  | <i>Default.</i> Generates a chain of N operations (adders ) for N inputs.  |
| hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission    | This implementation has minimal latency but is<br>large and slow. Generates a tree-shaped structure<br>of adders.  |
| hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission | This implementation optimizes latency * area<br>and is faster than the tree implementation. It<br>computes partial sums and cascades adders. See<br>"A Note on Cascade Implementations" on page<br>4-26. |

#### Built-In/SubSystem

| Implementation                                | Description   |
|---|---|
| hdldefaults.SubsystemBlackBoxHDLInstantiation | This implementation generates a<br>black box interface for subsystems.<br>That is, the generated HDL code<br>includes only the input/output port<br>definitions for the subsystem. In<br>this way, you can use a subsystem in<br>your model to generate an interface<br>to existing hand-written HDL code.<br>The black box interface generated<br>for subsystems is similar to the<br>interface generated for Model blocks,<br>but without generation of clock<br>signals. |
| hdldefaults.NoHDLEmission                     | This implementation completely<br>removes the subsystem from the<br>generated code. This lets you use a<br>subsystem in simulation but treat it<br>as a "no-op" in the HDL code.  |

For more information on subsystem implementations, see Chapter 7, "Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code".

| Implementation                     | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| hdldefaults.PassThroughHDLEmission | Provides a pass-through implementation in<br>which the block's inputs are passed directly to its<br>outputs. (In effect, the block becomes a wire in the<br>HDL code.) Several blocks are supported with a<br>pass-through implementation.  |
| hdldefaults.NoHDLEmission          | This implementation completely removes the<br>block from the generated code. This lets you use<br>the block in simulation but treat it as a "no-op"<br>in the HDL code. This implementation is used<br>for many blocks (such as Scopes and Assertions)<br>that are significant in simulation but would be<br>meaningless in HDL code. You can also use this<br>implementation as an alternative implementation<br>for subsystems. |

For more information related to special-purpose implementations, see Chapter 7, "Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code".

## A Note on Cascade Implementations

Cascade implementations are available for the Sum of Elements, Product of Elements, and MinMax blocks. These implementations require multiple clock cycles to process their inputs; therefore, their inputs must be kept unchanged for their entire sample-time period. Simulink HDL Coder test benches accomplish this by using a register to drive the inputs.

A recommended design practice, when integrating HDL code generated by Simulink HDL Coder with other HDL code, is to provide registers at the inputs. While not strictly required, adding registers to the inputs improves timing and avoids problems with data stability for blocks that require multiple clock cycles to process their inputs.

# **Summary of Block Implementations**

The following table summarizes all blocks that are supported for HDL code generation and their available implementations in the current release. The columns signify

- Simulink Block: Library path and block name as displayed in Simulink.
- *Blockscope*: Block path and name to be passed as a blockscope string argument to forEach or forAll.
- *Implementations*: Names of available implementations. When specifying an implementation argument to forEach or forAll, use the format package.class, for example, hdldefaults.AssignmentHDLEmission or hdlstateflow.StateflowHDLInstantiation.

Almost all implementation classes currently belong to the package hdldefaults. In the following table, the package name is given explicitly only for classes that belong to some other package.

| Simulink Block                                    | Blockscope                       | Implementations       |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Assertion          | built-in/Assertion NoHDLEmission |                       |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Assignment            | built-in/Assignment              | AssignmentHDLEmission |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Abs                   | built-in/Abs                     | AbsHDLEmission        |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Matrix<br>Concatenate | built-in/Concatenate             | MuxHDLEmission        |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Vector<br>Concatenate | built-in/Concatenate             | MuxHDLEmission        |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Constant         | built-in/Constant                | ConstantHDLEmission   |

| Simulink Block   | Blockscope                      | Implementations                            |  |  |
|--|---------------------------------|--|--|--|
| simulink/Commonly<br>Used Blocks/Data Type<br>Conversion | built-in/<br>DataTypeConversion | DataTypeConversionHDLEmission              |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Demux                   | built-in/Demux                  | DemuxHDLEmission                           |  |  |
| simulink/Sinks/Display                                   | built-in/Display                | NoHDLEmission                              |  |  |
| dspsigattribs/Frame<br>Conversion                        | built-in/FrameConversion        | FrameConversionHDLEmission                 |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used                                   | built-in/Gain                   | GainMultHDLEmission                        |  |  |
| Blocks/Gain  |                                 | GainFCSDHDLEmission                        |  |  |
|  |                                 | GainCSDHDLEmission                         |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Ground                  | built-in/Ground                 | ConstantHDLEmission                        |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used                                   | built-in/Inport                 | NoHDLEmission                              |  |  |
| Blocks/In1   |                                 | (Input ports are generated automatically.) |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Logical Operator        | built-in/Logic                  | LogicHDLEmission                           |  |  |
| simulink/Lookup  | built-in/Lookup                 | LookupHDLInstantiation                     |  |  |
| Tables/Lookup Table                                      |                                 | LookupHDLEmission                          |  |  |
| simulink/Discrete/Memory                                 | built-in/Memory                 | MemoryHDLEmission                          |  |  |
| simulink/Math  | built-in/MinMax                 | MinMaxTreeHDLEmission                      |  |  |
| Operations/MinMax  |                                 | MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission                   |  |  |
| simulink/Ports &<br>Subsystems/Model                     | built-in/ModelReference         | ModelReferenceHDLInstantiation             |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Routing/Index Vector                  | built-in/MultiPortSwitch        | MultiPortSwitchHDLEmission                 |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Routing/Multiport Switch              | built-in/MultiPortSwitch        | MultiPortSwitchHDLEmission                 |  |  |

| Simulink Block                                     | Blockscope                | Implementations   |  |  |
|--|---------------------------|---|--|--|
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Mux               | built-in/Mux              | MuxHDLEmission  |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used                             | built-in/Outport          | NoHDLEmission   |  |  |
| Blocks/Out1  |                           | (Output ports are generated automatically.)   |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used                             | built-in/Product          | ProductLinearHDLEmission  |  |  |
| Blocks/Product                                     |                           | ProductTreeHDLEmission  |  |  |
|  |                           | ProductCascadeHDLEmission   |  |  |
|  |                           | (ProductTreeHDLEmission and<br>ProductCascadeHDLEmission are<br>supported for Product blocks having<br>two or more inputs.) |  |  |
| simulink/Math                                      | built-in/Product          | ProductTreeHDLEmission  |  |  |
| Operations/Product of<br>Elements                  |                           | ProductLinearHDLEmission  |  |  |
|  |                           | ProductCascadeHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Rate Transition      | built-in/RateTransition   | RateTransitionHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly                                  | built-in/                 | RelationalOperatorHDLEmission   |  |  |
| Used Blocks/Relational<br>Operator                 | RelationalOperator        |   |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Scope             | built-in/Scope            | NoHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Sinks/Floating<br>Scope                   | built-in/Scope            | NoHDLEmission   |  |  |
| dspsnks4/Time Scope                                | built-in/Scope            | NoHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Routing/Selector                | built-in/Selector         | SelectorHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Signal<br>Conversion | built-in/SignalConversion | PassThroughHDLEmission  |  |  |

| Simulink Block  | Blockscope                       | Implementations  |  |  |
|---|----------------------------------|--|--|--|
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Sign                      | built-in/Signum                  | SignumHDLEmission  |  |  |
| simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Signal<br>Specification | built-in/<br>SignalSpecification | SignalSpecificationHDLEmission   |  |  |
| simulink/Sinks/Stop<br>Simulation                     | built-in/Stop                    | NoHDLEmission  |  |  |
| simulink/Commonly Used                                | built-in/Sum                     | SumLinearHDLEmission   |  |  |
| Blocks/Sum  |                                  | SumTreeHDLEmission   |  |  |
|   |                                  | SumCascadeHDLEmission  |  |  |
|   |                                  | (SumTreeHDLEmission and<br>SumCascadeHDLEmission are<br>supported for Sum blocks having two<br>or more inputs.)      |  |  |
| simulink/Math   | built-in/Sum                     | SumTreeHDLEmission   |  |  |
| Operations/Add  |                                  | SumLinearHDLEmission   |  |  |
|   |                                  | SumCascadeHDLEmission  |  |  |
|   |                                  | (SumTreeHDLEmission and<br>SumCascadeHDLEmission are<br>supported for Add blocks having two or<br>more inputs.)      |  |  |
| simulink/Math   | built-in/Sum                     | SumTreeHDLEmission   |  |  |
| Operations/Subtract                                   |                                  | SumLinearHDLEmission   |  |  |
|   |                                  | SumCascadeHDLEmission  |  |  |
|   |                                  | (SumTreeHDLEmission and<br>SumCascadeHDLEmission are<br>supported for Subtract blocks having<br>two or more inputs.) |  |  |

| Simulink Block   | Blockscope   | Implementations   |
|--|--|---|
| simulink/Math  | built-in/Sum   | SumTreeHDLEmission  |
| Operations/Sum of<br>Elements                            |  | SumLinearHDLEmission  |
|  |  | SumCascadeHDLEmission   |
|  |  | (SumTreeHDLEmission and<br>SumCascadeHDLEmission are<br>supported for Sum of Elements blocks<br>having two or more inputs.) |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Switch                  | built-in/Switch  | SwitchHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Terminator              | built-in/Terminator                                      | NoHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Sinks/To File                                   | built-in/ToFile  | NoHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Sinks/To<br>Workspace                           | built-in/ToWorkspace                                     | NoHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Commonly Used<br>Blocks/Unit Delay              | built-in/UnitDelay                                       | UnitDelayHDLEmission  |
| simulink/Discrete/                                       | built-in/ZeroOrderHold                                   | ZeroOrderHoldHDLEmission  |
| Zero-Order Hold  |  |   |
| simulink/Discrete/Integer<br>Delay                       | simulink/Discrete/Integer<br>Delay                       | IntegerDelayHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Discrete/Tapped<br>Delay                        | simulink/Discrete/Tapped<br>Delay                        | TappedDelayHDLEmission  |
| simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Bit Clear           | simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Bit Clear           | BitOpsHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Bit Set             | simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Bit Set             | BitOpsHDLEmission   |
| simulink/Logic and<br>Bit Operations/Bitwise<br>Operator | simulink/Logic and<br>Bit Operations/Bitwise<br>Operator | BitOpsHDLEmission   |

| Simulink Block  | Blockscope  | Implementations           |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Compare To<br>Constant | simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Compare To<br>Constant | CompareToConstHDLEmission |
| simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Compare To<br>Zero     | simulink/Logic and Bit<br>Operations/Compare To<br>Zero     | CompareToZeroHDLEmission  |
| simulink/Logic and<br>Bit Operations/Shift<br>Arithmetic    | simulink/Logic and<br>Bit Operations/Shift<br>Arithmetic    | BitOpsHDLEmission         |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Reshape                         | simulink/Math<br>Operations/Reshape                         | PassThroughHDLEmission    |
| simulink/Math<br>Operations/Unary Minus                     | simulink/Math<br>Operations/Unary Minus                     | UnaryMinusHDLEmission     |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Gap         | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Gap         | NoHDLEmission             |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Range       | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Range       | NoHDLEmission             |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Gap          | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Gap          | NoHDLEmission             |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Range        | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Range        | NoHDLEmission             |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Discrete Gradient   | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Discrete Gradient   | NoHDLEmission             |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Lower Bound | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Lower Bound | NoHDLEmission             |

| Simulink Block   | Blockscope   | Implementations               |
|--|--|-------------------------------|
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Upper Bound  | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check<br>Dynamic Upper Bound    | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Input<br>Resolution   | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Input<br>Resolution       | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Lower Bound   | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Lower Bound     | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Upper Bound   | simulink/Model<br>Verification/Check Static<br>Upper Bound     | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Data Type<br>Duplicate   | simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Data Type<br>Duplicate           | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Data Type<br>Propagation   | simulink/Signal<br>Attributes/Data Type<br>Propagation         | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Sinks/XY Graph  | simulink/Sinks/XY Graph  | NoHDLEmission                 |
| simulink/Sources/Counter<br>Free-Running   | simulink/Sources/Counter<br>Free-Running                       | CounterFreeRunningHDLEmission |
| simulink/Sources/Counter<br>Limited  | simulink/Sources/Counter<br>Limited                            | CounterLimitedHDLEmission     |
| simulink/User-Defined<br>Functions/Embedded<br>MATLAB Function   | simulink/User-Defined<br>Functions/Embedded<br>MATLAB Function | StateflowHDLInstantiation     |
| dsparch4/Digital Filter<br>Note: Filter Design HDL<br>Coder is required to<br>generate code for the<br>Digital Filter block. | dsparch4/Digital Filter  | DigitalFilterHDLInstantiation |
| dspindex/Multiport<br>Selector   | dspindex/Multiport<br>Selector                                 | MultiportSelectorHDLEmission  |

| Simulink Block                      | Blockscope                          | Implementations                                |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| dspindex/Variable Selector          | dspindex/Variable<br>Selector       | VariableSelectorHDLEmission                    |
| dspsigattribs/Convert 1-D<br>to 2-D | dspsigattribs/Convert 1-D<br>to 2-D | PassThroughHDLEmission                         |
| dspsigops/Delay                     | dspsigops/Delay                     | DSPDelayHDLEmission                            |
| dspsnks4/Matrix Viewer              | dspsnks4/Matrix Viewer              | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| dspsnks4/Signal To<br>Workspace     | dspsnks4/Signal To<br>Workspace     | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| dspsnks4/Spectrum Scope             | dspsnks4/Spectrum Scope             | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| dspsnks4/Vector Scope               | dspsnks4/Vector Scope               | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| dspsnks4/Waterfall                  | dspsnks4/Waterfall                  | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| dspsrcs4/DSP Constant               | dspsrcs4/DSP Constant               | ConstantHDLEmission                            |
| dspstat3/Maximum                    | dspstat3/Maximum                    | MinMaxTreeHDLEmission                          |
|                                     |                                     | MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission                       |
| dspstat3/Minimum                    | dspstat3/Minimum                    | MinMaxTreeHDLEmission                          |
|                                     |                                     | ${\it MinMaxCascadeHDLEmission}$               |
| modelsimlib/HDL<br>Cosimulation     | modelsimlib/HDL<br>Cosimulation     | ModelSimHDLInstantiation                       |
| modelsimlib/To VCD File             | modelsimlib/To VCD File             | NoHDLEmission                                  |
| sflib/Chart                         | sflib/Chart                         | ${\tt hdlstateflow.StateflowHDLInstantiation}$ |

# Generating Bit-True Cycle-Accurate Models

| Overview of Generated Models<br>(p. 5-2)               | Motivation for generating bit-true<br>and cycle-accurate models; summary<br>of model generation features    |
|--|---|
| Example: Numeric Differences (p. 5-4)                  | Model generation case study<br>illustrating numeric differences<br>between original and generated<br>models |
| Example: Latency (p. 5-8)                              | Model generation case study<br>illustrating latency introduced in<br>HDL code and generated model           |
| Defaults and Options for Generated<br>Models (p. 5-12) | Defaults used in model generation;<br>GUI options and makehd1 properties<br>related to generated models     |

# **Overview of Generated Models**

In some circumstances, significant differences in behavior can arise between a Simulink model and the HDL code generated from that model. Such differences fall into two categories:

- *Numerics*: differences in intermediate and/or final computations. For example, a selected block implementation may restructure arithmetic operations to optimize for speed (see "Example: Numeric Differences" on page 5-4). Where such numeric differences exist, the HDL code is no longer *bit-true* to the Simulink model.
- *Latency*: insertion of delays of one or more clock cycles at certain points in the HDL code. Some block implementations that optimize for area can introduce these delays. Where such latency exists, the timing of the HDL code is no longer *cycle-accurate* with respect to the Simulink model.

To help you evaluate such cases, Simulink HDL Coder creates a *generated model* that is bit-true and cycle-accurate with respect to the generated HDL code. The generated model lets you

- Run Simulink simulations that accurately reflect the behavior of the generated HDL code.
- Create test benches based on the generated model, rather than the original model.
- Visually detect (by color highlighting of affected subsystems) all differences between the original and generated models.

Simulink HDL Coder always creates a generated model as part of the code generation process, and always generates test benches based on the generated model, rather than the original model. In cases where no latency or numeric differences occur, you can disregard the generated model except when generating test benches.

Simulink HDL Coder also provides options that let you

- Suppress display of the generated model.
- Create and display the only generated model, with code generation suppressed.

- Specify the color highlighting of differences between the original and generated models.
- Specify a name or prefix for the generated model.

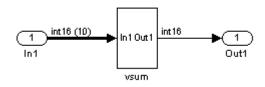
These options are described in "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12.

## **Example: Numeric Differences**

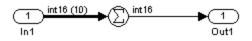
This example first examines a simple model that uses a code generation control file to select a speed-optimized Sum block implementation. It then examines a generated model and locates the numeric changes introduced by the optimization.

If you are not familiar with code generation control files and selection of block implementations, see Chapter 4, "Code Generation Control Files".

The model, simplevectorsum, consists of a subsystem, vsum, driven by a vector input of width 10, with a scalar output. The following figure shows the root level of the model.



The device under test is the vsum subsystem, shown in the following figure. The subsystem contains a Sum block, configured for vector summation.



The model is configured to use a code generation control file, svsumctrl.m. The control file (shown in the following listing) maps the SumTreeHDLEmission implementation to the Sum block within the vsum subsystem. This implementation, optimized for minimal latency, generates a tree-shaped structure of adders for the Sum block.

```
function config = svsumctrl
% Code generation control file for simplevectorsum model.
```

```
config = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
% Specify tree-structured adders implementaton for Sum block.
config.forEach('simplevectorsum/vsum/Sum',...
    'built-in/Sum',{},...
    'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission',{});
```

The **File name** field of the Configuration Parameters dialog box (shown in the following figure) specifies that this control file is to be used during code generation.

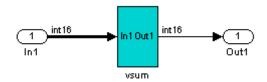
| 🙀 Configuration Parameter  | rs: simplevectorsum/Configu   | uration                   |        | ×                         |
|--|---|---------------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| Select:  | Code generation control file-   |                           |        |                           |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics   | File name: D:\Work\slhdlcod   | der_work\elab\svsumctrl.m |        | Load<br>Save              |
| Sample Time<br>Data Validity<br>Type Conversion<br>Connectivity  | Target<br>Generate HDL for:<br>Language:  | simplevectorsum/vsum 💽    |        |                           |
| Compatibility<br>Model Referencing   | Directory:  | hdlsrc                    |        | Browse                    |
| Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Seal-Time Workshop     G-Real-Time Workshop     G-Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug | Code generation output<br>C Generate HDL code<br>C Display generated model or<br>C Generate HDL and display |                           |        |                           |
| ⊡-HDL Coder  | Restore Factory Defaults  |                           |        | Run Compatibility Checker |
| Global Settings<br>Test Bench  |   |                           |        | Generate                  |
| 1  |   | OK                        | Cancel | Help Apply                |

When code generation is initiated, Simulink HDL Coder displays messages similar to those shown in the following example. The messages indicate that the control file is applied; control file processing is followed by creation of the generated model and generation of HDL code.

```
### Applying HDL Code Generation Control Statements
### 1 Control Statements to be applied
```

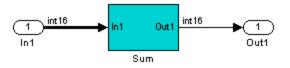
### Begin Model Generation
### Generating new model: gm\_simplevectorsum.mdl
### Model Generation Complete.
### Begin VHDL Code Generation
### Generating package file hdlsrc\vsum\_pkg.vhd
### Working on simplevectorsum/vsum as hdlsrc\vsum.vhd
### HDL Code Generation Complete.

The generated model, gm\_ simplevectorsum, is displayed after code generation. This model is shown in the following figure.

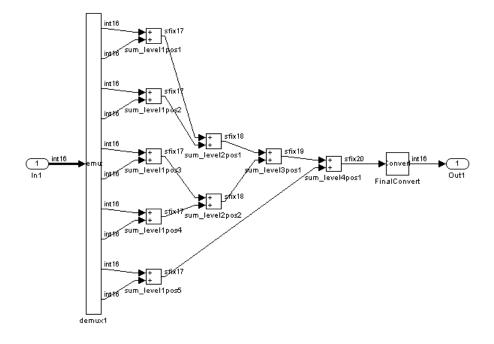


At the root level, this model appears identical to the original model, except that the vsum subsystem has been highlighted in cyan. This highlighting indicates that the subsystem differs in some respect from the vsum subsystem of the original model.

The following figure shows the vsum subsystem in the generated model. Observe that the Sum block is now implemented as a subsystem, which is also highlighted.



The following figure shows the internal structure of the Sum subsystem.



The vector sum is implemented as a tree of adders (Sum blocks). The vector input signal is demultiplexed and connected, as five pairs of operands, to the five leftmost adders. The widths of the adder outputs increase from left to right, as required to avoid overflow in computing intermediate results. A Data Conversion block, inserted before the final output, converts the 20-bit fixed-point result to the int16 data type required by the model.

# **Example: Latency**

This example uses the simplevectorsum\_cascade model. This model is identical to the model in the previous example ("Example: Numeric Differences" on page 5-4), except that it uses a control file that selects a cascaded implementation for the Sum block. This implementation introduces both latency and numeric differences.

The model is configured to use the control file svsum\_cascade\_ctrl.m. The control file (shown in the following listing) maps the SumCascadeHDLEmission implementation to the Sum block within the vsum subsystem. This implementation generates a cascade of adders for the Sum block.

```
function config = svsum_cascade_ctrl
% Code generation control file for simplevectorsum model.
config = hdlnewconfig(mfilename);
% specify cascaded adders implementation for Sum block
config.forEach('simplevectorsum_cascade/vsum/Sum',...
        'built-in/Sum',{},...
        'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission',{});
```

The **File name** field of the Configuration Parameters dialog box (shown in the following figure) specifies that this control file is used during code generation.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter  | s: simplevectorsum_case   | ade/Configuration (Activ   | e) |        |                        | ×                      |
|--|---|--|----|--------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Select:  | Code generation control file-   |  |    |        |                        |                        |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Connectivity     Model Referencing | File name: D:\Work\sIhdle<br>Target<br>Generate HDL for:<br>Language:<br>Directory:                     | oder_work\elab\svsum_casc<br>simplevectorsum_cascade<br>vhdt<br>hdlsrc |    |        |                        | Load<br>Save<br>Browse |
| Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Model Referencing     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Determ                               | Code generation output<br>C Generate HDL code<br>C Display generated model<br>C Generate HDL and displa | -  |    |        |                        |                        |
| Debug<br>Interface<br>HDL Coder<br>Global Settings<br>Test Bench<br>EDA Tool Scripts   | Restore Factory Defaults  |  |    |        | Run Compatibi<br>Gener |                        |
|  |   |  | ОК | Cancel | Help                   | Apply                  |

When code generation is initiated, Simulink HDL Coder displays messages similar to those shown in the following example. The messages indicate that the control file is applied; control file processing is followed by creation of the generated model and generation of HDL code.

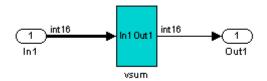
```
### Applying HDL Code Generation Control Statements
### 1 Control Statements to be applied
### Begin Model Generation
### Generating new model: gm_simplevectorsum_cascade.mdl
### Model Generation Complete.
### Begin VHDL Code Generation
### Generating package file hdlsrc\simplevectorsum_cascade_pkg.vhd
### Working on simplevectorsum_cascade/vsum as hdlsrc\vsum.vhd
### Working on Timing Controller as hdlsrc\Timing_Controller.vhd
### Working on simplevectorsum_cascade as hdlsrc\simplevectorsum_cascade.vhd
### Working on Simplevectorsum_cascade as hdlsrc\simplevectorsum_cascade.vhd
### HDL Code Generation Complete.
```

In the generated code, partial sums are computed by adders arranged in a cascade structure. Each adder computes a partial sum by demultiplexing and adding several inputs in succession. These computation take several clock cycles. On each cycle, an addition is performed; the result is then added to the next input.

To complete all computations within one sample period, the system master clock runs faster than the nominal sample rate of the system. A latency of one clock cycle (in the case of this model) is required to transmit the final result to the output. The inputs cannot change until all computations have been performed and the final result is presented at the output.

The generated HDL code runs at two effective rates: a faster rate for internal computations, and a slower rate for input/output. A special Timing\_Controller entity generates these rates from a single master clock using counters and multiple clock enables. The Timing\_Controller entity definition is written to a separate code file.

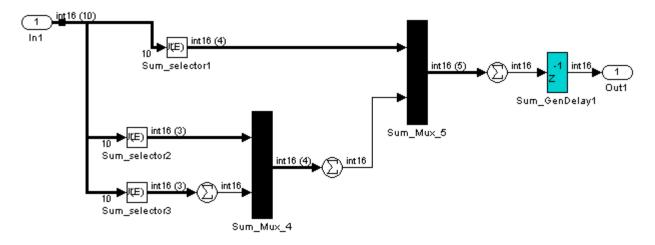
The generated model, gm\_simplevectorsum\_cascade, is displayed after code generation. This model is shown in the following figure.



As in the previous (gm\_simplevectorsum) example, the vsum subsystem is highlighted in cyan. This highlighting indicates that the subsystem differs in some respect from the vsum subsystem of the original model.

The following block diagram shows the vsum subsystem in the generated model. The subsystem has been restructured to reflect the structure of the generated HDL code; inputs are grouped and routed to three adders for partial sum computations.

A Unit Delay (highlighted in cyan) has been inserted before the final output. This block delays, (in this case for one sample period), the appearance of the final sum at the output. The delay reflects the latency of the generated HDL code.



**Note** The HDL code generated from the example model used in this section is bit-true to the original Simulink model.

However, in some cases, cascaded block implementations can produce numeric differences between the original Simulink model and the generated HDL code, in addition to the introduction of latency. Numeric differences can arise from saturation and rounding operations.

# **Defaults and Options for Generated Models**

This section summarizes

- The defaults used by Simulink HDL Coder when generated models are built (see "Defaults for Model Generation" on page 5-12).
- GUI options that provide control over the generation, naming, and appearance of generated models (see "GUI Options" on page 5-13 and "Generated Model Properties for makehdl" on page 5-14).
- makehdl properties that provide control over the generation, naming, and appearance of generated models (see "GUI Options" on page 5-13 and "Generated Model Properties for makehdl" on page 5-14).

#### **Defaults for Model Generation**

#### **Model Generation**

Simulink HDL Coder always creates a generated model as part of the code generation process. The generated model is built in memory, before actual generation of HDL code. The HDL code and the generated model are bit-true and cycle-accurate with respect to one another.

**Note** The in-memory generated model is not written to a model file unless you explicitly save it.

#### **Naming of Generated Models**

The naming convention for generated models is

```
prefix_modelname
```

where the default prefix is gm\_, and the default modelname is the name of the original model.

If code is generated more than once from the same original model, and previously generated model(s) exist in memory, an integer is suffixed to the name of each successively generated model. The suffix ensures that each generated model has a unique name. For example, if the original model is named test, generated models will be named gm\_test, gm\_test0, gm\_test1, etc.

**Note** Take care, when regenerating code from your models, to select the original model for code generation, not a previously generated model. Generating code from a generated model may introduce unintended delays or numeric differences that could make the model operate incorrectly.

#### **Block Highlighting**

By default, blocks in a generated model that differ from the original model, and their ancestor (parent) blocks in the model hierarchy, are highlighted in the default color, cyan. You can quickly see whether any differences have been introduced, by examining the root level of the generated model.

If there are no differences between the original and generated models, no blocks will be highlighted.

#### **GUI Options**

The Simulink HDL Coder GUI provides high-level options controlling the generation and display of generated models. More detailed control is available through the makehdl command (see "Generated Model Properties for makehdl" on page 5-14). Generated model options are located in the top-level **HDL Options** pane of the Configuration Parameters dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

| 🙀 Configuration Parameter                                     | s: simplevectorsum/Configur                      | ation                  |        | X                         |
|---|--|------------------------|--------|---------------------------|
| Select:   | Code generation control file                     |                        |        |                           |
| Solver<br>Data Import/Export<br>Optimization                  | File name: D:\Work\slhdlcode                     | _work\elab\svsumctrl.m |        | Load<br>Save              |
| ⊡-Diagnostics<br>Sample Time                                  | -Target  |                        |        |                           |
|   | Generate HDL for:                                | simplevectorsum/vsum   | 1      |                           |
| Compatibility<br>Model Referencing<br>Hardware Implementation | Directory:                                       | hdisrc                 | J      | Browse                    |
|   | Code generation output                           |                        |        |                           |
| ⊡-Real-Time Workshop  | C Generate HDL code                              |                        |        |                           |
| Comments  | C Display generated model only                   |                        |        |                           |
| Symbols<br>Custom Code<br>Debug                               | <ul> <li>Generate HDL and display get</li> </ul> | enerated model         |        |                           |
| Interface   | Restore Factory Defaults                         |                        |        | Run Compatibility Checker |
| ⊡-HDL Coder<br>Global Settings                                |  |                        |        | Generate                  |
| Test Bench  |  |                        |        |                           |
|   |  |                        |        |                           |
|   |  |                        |        |                           |
|   |  |                        |        |                           |
|   |  | OK                     | Cancel | Help Apply                |

The options are

- Generate HDL code: (Default) Generate code, but do not display the generated model.
- **Display generated model only**: Create and display the generated model, but do not proceed to code generation.
- Generate HDL code and display generated model: Generate both code and model, and display the model when completed.

#### **Generated Model Properties for makehdl**

The following table summarizes makehdl properties that provide detailed controls for the generated model.

| Property and Value(s)                     | Description   |
|---|---|
| 'Generatedmodelnameprefix',<br>['string'] | The default name for the generated model is gm_modelname, where gm_ is the default prefix and modelname is the original model name. To override the default prefix, assign a string value to this property. |
| 'Generatemodelname', ['string']           | By default, the original model name is used as the<br>modelname substring of the generated model name.<br>To specify a different model name, assign a string<br>value to this property.                     |
| 'CodeGenerationOutput', 'string'          | <ul> <li>Controls the production of generated code and display of the generated model. Values are</li> <li>GenerateHDLCode: (Default) Generate code, but do not display the generated model.</li> </ul>     |
|   | • GenerateHDLCodeAndDisplayGeneratedModel:<br>Create and display generated model, but do not<br>proceed to code generation.   |
|   | • DisplayGeneratedModelOnly: Generate both code and model, and display model when completed.  |

| Property and Value(s)                   | Description  |
|---|--|
| 'Highlightancestors', ['on'  <br>'off'] | By default, blocks in a generated model that differ<br>from the original model, and their ancestor (parent)<br>blocks in the model hierarchy, are highlighted in<br>a color specified by the Highlightcolor property.<br>If you do not want the ancestor blocks to be<br>highlighted, set this property to'off'. |
| 'Highlightcolor', 'RGBName'             | <pre>Specify the color used to highlight blocks in a generated model that differ from the original model (default: cyan). Specify the color (RGBName) as one of the following color string values:     cyan (default)     yellow     magenta     red     green     blue     white     black</pre>                |

# HDL Compatibility, Code Tracing, and Block Support Reports

| HDL Compatibility Checker (p. 6-2)              | How to check your models for HDL code generation compatibility   |
|---|--|
| Code Tracing Using the Mapping<br>File (p. 6-5) | How to use a mapping file to trace<br>generated HDL entities back to the<br>corresponding Simulink systems |
| Supported Blocks Library (p. 6-8)               | How to create a library of all blocks<br>that are currently supported for<br>HDL code generation           |

# **HDL Compatibility Checker**

The HDL compatibility checker lets you check whether a subsystem or model is compatible with HDL code generation. You can run the compatibility checker from the MATLAB command line or an M-file script, or from the Simulink GUI.

To run the compatibility checker from the command line or an M-file script, use the checkhdl function. The syntax of the function is

```
checkhdl('system')
```

where *system* is the device under test (DUT), typically a subsystem within the current Simulink model.

To run the compatibility checker from the Simulink GUI:

 Open the Configuration Parameters dialog box or the Model Explorer. Select the HDL Coder options category. The following figure shows the HDL Coder pane of the Configuration Parameters dialog box.

| 🍇 Configuration Paramete                         | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)              | × |
|--|--|---|
| Select:  | Code generation control file                       | 4 |
| Solver   | File name: sfir_fixed_control Load                 |   |
| Data Import/Export<br>Optimization               | Save   |   |
| ⊡- Diagnostics                                   |  |   |
| Sample Time                                      | Target-  |   |
| Data Validity<br>Type Conversion                 | Generate HDL for:                                  |   |
| Connectivity                                     | Language: vhdi 🔽                                   |   |
| Compatibility<br>Model Referencing               | Directory: hdlsrc Browse                           | I |
| Hardware Implementation<br>Model Referencing     | Code generation output                             | I |
| ⊨- Real-Time Workshop                            | Generate HDL code                                  |   |
| Comments<br>Symbols                              | C Display generated model only                     | I |
| Custom Code                                      | C Generate HDL code and display generated model    | I |
| Debug<br>Interface<br>⊟- <mark>-HDL Coder</mark> | Restore Factory Defaults Run Compatibility Checker |   |
| Global Settings                                  | Generate   | I |
| - Test Bench                                     |  |   |
| EDA Tool Scripts                                 |  | • |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply                               |   |

**2** Select the subsystem you want to check from the **Generate HDL for** pop-up menu.

#### 3 Click the Run Compatibility Checker button.

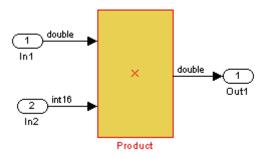
The HDL compatibility checker examines the specified system for any compatibility problems, such as use of unsupported blocks, illegal data type usage, etc. The HDL compatibility checker generates an HDL Code Generation Check Report, which is stored in the target directory. The report file naming convention is *system\_report.html*, where *system* is the name of the subsystem or model that was passed in to the HDL compatibility checker.

The HDL Code Generation Check Report is displayed in a browser window. Each entry in the HDL Code Generation Check Report is hyperlinked to the block or subsystem that caused the problem. When you click the hyperlink, Simulink highlights and displays the block of interest (provided that the model referenced by the report is open).

The following figure shows an HDL Code Generation Check Report that was generated for a subsystem with a Product block that was configured with a mixture of double and integer port data types. This configuration is legal in Simulink, but incompatible with Simulink HDL Coder.

| HDL Code Generation Check Report for ill_product/Subsystem         Generated on 2006-03-02 11:50:41         The following table describes the blocks that failed one or more checks for HDL code generation.         Simulink Block       Level         Description         ill_product/Subsystem/Product       Error         Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block         ill_product/Subsystem/Product       Error | ile Edit View Go Debug Desktop '   |                                   | _work/hdlsrc/Subsystem_report.html  | Ŧ |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| Simulink Block         Level         Description           ill_product/Subsystem/Product         Error         Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block  |  |                                   | ·   |   |
| III_product/Subsystem/Product Error Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block   | Generated on 2006-03-  | 02 11:50                          | :41   |   |
|   | The following table describes the blo  | cks that failed                   | a one or more checks for HDL code generation.   |   |
| II product/Subsystem/Product Error Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block  | The following table describes the blo  | cks that failed                   | a one or more checks for HDL code generation.   |   |
|   | The following table describes the blo<br>Simulink Block                                  | cks that failed                   | d one or more checks for HDL code generation.   |   |
|   | The following table describes the blo<br>Simulink Block<br>ill_product/Subsystem/Product | cks that failed<br>Level<br>Error | d one or more checks for HDL code generation.<br>Description<br>Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block |   |

When you click the hyperlink in the left column, Simulink opens the subsystem containing the offending block. The block of interest is highlighted, as shown in the following figure.



The following figure shows an HDL Code Generation Check Report that was generated for a subsystem that passed all compatibility checks. In this case, the report contains only a hyperlink to the subsystem that was checked.



### **Code Tracing Using the Mapping File**

**Note** This section refers to generated VHDL entities or Verilog modules generically as "entities."

A *mapping file* is a text report file generated by makehdl. Mapping files are generated as an aid in tracing generated HDL entities back to the corresponding Simulink systems.

A mapping file shows the relationship between systems in the Simulink model and the VHDL entities or Verilog modules that were generated from them. A mapping file entry has the form

Simulink\_path --> HDL\_name

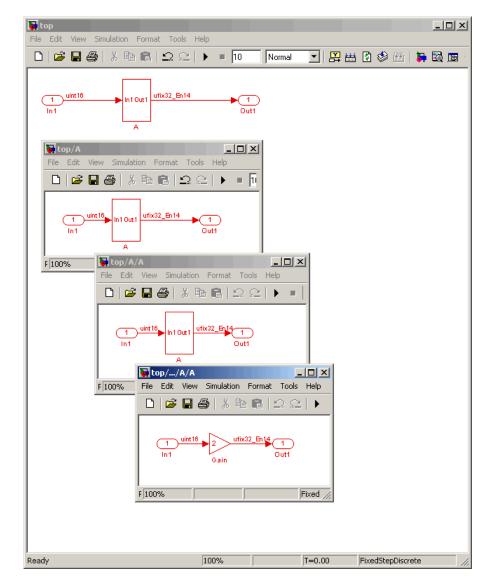
where Simulink\_path is the full Simulink path to a system in the Simulink model and HDL\_name is the name of the VHDL entity or Verilog module that was generated from that system. The mapping file contains one entry per line.

In simple cases, the mapping file may contain only one entry. For example, the symmetric\_fir subsystem of the sfir\_fixed demo model generates the following mapping file:

```
sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir --> symmetric_fir
```

Mapping files are more useful when HDL code is generated from complex models where multiple subsystems generate many entities, and in cases where conflicts between identically named subsystems are resolved by Simulink HDL Coder.

If a subsystem name is unique within the model, Simulink HDL Coder simply uses the subsystem name as the generated entity name. Where identically named subsystems are encountered, Simulink HDL Coder attempts to resolve the conflict by appending a postfix string (by default, '\_entity') to the conflicting subsystem. If subsequently generated entity names conflict in turn with this name, incremental numerals  $(1,2,3,\ldots n)$  are appended.



As an example, consider the model shown in the following figure. The top-level model contains subsystems named A nested to three levels.

When code is generated for the top-level subsystem A, makehdl works its way up from the deepest level of the model hierarchy, generating unique entity names for each subsystem.

```
makehdl('top/A')
### Working on top/A/A/A as A_entity1.vhd
### Working on top/A/A as A_entity2.vhd
### Working on top/A as A.vhd
### HDL Code Generation Complete.
```

The following example lists the contents of the resultant mapping file.

top/A/A/A --> A\_entity1
top/A/A --> A\_entity2
top/A --> A

Given this information, you could trace any generated entity back to its corresponding subsystem by using the open\_system command, for example:

open\_system('top/A/A')

Each generated entity file also contains the Simulink path for its corresponding subsystem in the header comments at the top of the file, as in the following code excerpt.

- -- Module: A\_entity2
- -- Simulink Path: top/A
- -- Created: 2005-04-20 10:23:46
- -- Hierarchy Level: 0

# **Supported Blocks Library**

Simulink HDL Coder provides an M-file utility, hdllib.m, that creates a library of all blocks that are currently supported for HDL code generation.

The block library, hdlsupported.mdl, affords quick access to all supported blocks. By constructing models using blocks from this library, you can ensure compatibility with Simulink HDL Coder.

The set of supported blocks will change in future releases of Simulink HDL Coder. To keep the hdlsupported.mdl current, The MathWorks recommends that you rebuild the library each time you install a new release. To create the library:

**1** Type the following at the MATLAB prompt:

hdllib

hdllib starts generation of the hdlsupported library. Simulink loads many libraries during the creation of the hdlsupported library. When hdllib completes generation of the library, it does not unload these libraries.

2 After the library is generated, you must save it to a directory of your choice. You should retain the file name hdlsupported.mdl, because this document refers to the supported blocks library by that name.

# 7

# Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code

Generating a Black Box Interface for a Subsystem (p. 7-3)

Generating Interfaces for Referenced Models (p. 7-6)

Code Generation for HDL Cosimulation Blocks (p. 7-7)

Pass-Through and No-Op Implementations (p. 7-9)

Overview of HDL interfaces generated by Simulink HDL Coder

How to generate an interface to existing or legacy HDL code from a subsystem

Code generation for models referenced within a Model block

Generating an interface to HDL code for cosimulation with HDL simulators

Bypassing or omitting selected subsystems in generated code

# **Overview of HDL Interfaces**

Simulink HDL Coder provides a number of different ways to generate interfaces to your hand-written or legacy HDL code. Depending on your application, you may want to generate such an interface from different levels of your model:

- Subsystem
- Model referenced by a higher-level model
- Cosimulation block

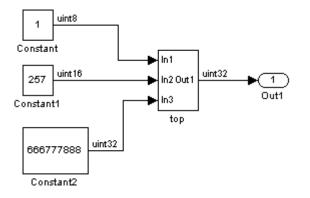
You can also generate a pass-through (wire) HDL implementation for a subsystem, or omit code generation entirely for a subsystem. Both of these techniques can be useful in cases where you need a subsystem in your simulation, but do not need the subsystem in your generated HDL code.

## Generating a Black Box Interface for a Subsystem

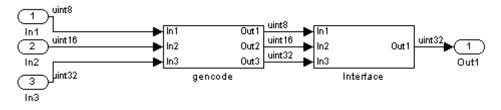
A *black box* interface for a subsystem is a generated VHDL component or Verilog module that includes only the HDL input/output port definitions for the subsystem. By generating such a component, you can use a subsystem in your model to generate an interface to existing hand-written HDL code.

To generate the interface, you use a control file to map one or more Subsystem blocks to the hdldefaults.SubsystemBlackBoxHDLInstantiation implementation. (See Chapter 4, "Code Generation Control Files" for a detailed description of the structure and use of control files.)

As an example, consider the model and subsystem shown in the following figures. The model, subsystst, contains a subsystem, top, which is the device under test.



The subsystem top contains two lower-level subsystems, gencode and Interface.



Suppose that you want to generate HDL code from top, with a black box interface from the Interface subsystem. The first step would be to create a control file that defines the Simulink path and block type for the Interface subsystem, and maps this subsystem to the hdldefaults.SubsystemBlackBoxHDLInstantiation implementation. The following listing shows an example control file.

```
% Code generation control file - blackbox_ctrl.m
function control = blackbox_ctrl
control = hdlnewcontrol(mfilename);
% Generate a black box interface for the subsystem labeled
% Interface within the top-level device
control.forEach( ...
   'subsystst/top/Interface', ...
   'built-in/SubSystem', {}, ...
   'hdldefaults.SubsystemBlackBoxHDLInstantiation');
```

The control file is attached to the model when code generation is invoked. In the following makehol command line, VHDL code is generated by default.

```
makehdl('subsystst/top','HDLControlFiles',{'blackbox_ctrl.m'})
### Applying User Configuration File: blackbox_ctrl.m
### Begin Vhdl Code Generation
### Working on subsystst/top/gencode as hdlsrc/gencode.vhd
### Working on subsystst/top as hdlsrc/top.vhd
### HDL Code Generation Complete.
```

In the makehdl progress messages, observe that the gencode subsystem generates a separate code file (gencode.vhd) for its VHDL entity definition. The Interface subsystem does not generate such a file. The interface code for this subsystem is in top.vhd, generated from subsystst/top. The following code listing shows the component definition and instantiation generated for the Interface subsystem.

```
COMPONENT Interface

PORT(In1 : IN std_logic_vector(7 DOWNTO 0); -- ufix8

In2 : IN std_logic_vector(15 DOWNTO 0); -- ufix16

In3 : IN std_logic_vector(31 DOWNTO 0); -- ufix32
```

```
Out1 : OUT std_logic_vector(31 DOWNTO 0) -- ufix32
);
END COMPONENT;
...
u_Interface : Interface
PORT MAP
(In1 => gencode_out1, -- ufix8
In2 => gencode_out2, -- ufix16
In3 => gencode_out3, -- ufix32
Out1 => Interface_out1 -- ufix32
);
ce_out <= enb;</pre>
```

The black box interface generated for subsystems is similar to the interface generated for Model blocks, but without generation of clock signals. (See also "Generating Interfaces for Referenced Models" on page 7-6.)

# **Generating Interfaces for Referenced Models**

The Simulink model referencing feature allows you to include models in other models as blocks. Included models are referenced through Model blocks (see "Referencing Models" in the Simulink documentation for detailed information).

For Model blocks, Simulink HDL Coder generates a VHDL component or a Verilog module instantiation. However, makehdl does not attempt to generate HDL code for the models referenced from Model blocks. You must generate HDL code for each referenced model individually. To generate code for a referenced model:

- **1** Select the referencing Model block.
- 2 Double-click the Model block to open its mask dialog box.
- **3** Click the Open Model button to open the referenced model.
- **4** Invoke the checkhdl and makehdl functions to check and generate code from that model.

**Note** The checkhdl function does not check port data types within the referenced model.

The Model block is useful for multiply-instantiated blocks, or for blocks for which you already have hand-written HDL code. The generated HDL will contain all the code that is required to interface to the referenced HDL code. Code is generated with the following assumptions:

- Every HDL entity or module requires clock, clock enable, and reset ports. Therefore, these ports are defined for each generated entity or module.
- Use of Simulink data types is assumed. For VHDL code, port data types are assumed to be STD\_LOGIC or STD\_LOGIC\_VECTOR.

# **Code Generation for HDL Cosimulation Blocks**

Simulink HDL Coder supports HDL code generation for the HDL Cosimulation blocks provided by the following MathWorks products:

- Link for ModelSim (this product requires the Mentor Graphics ModelSim SE/PE HDL simulator).
- Link for Cadence Incisive (this product requires the Cadence Incisive HDL simulator)

Each of the HDL Cosimulation blocks cosimulates a hardware component by applying input signals to, and reading output signals from, an HDL model that executes under an HDL simulator. For detailed information on the HDL Cosimulation blocks, see the Link for ModelSim and Link for Cadence Incisive documentation.

You can use an HDL Cosimulation block with Simulink HDL Coder to generate an interface to your hand-written or legacy HDL code. When an HDL Cosimulation block is included in a model, Simulink HDL Coder generates a VHDL or Verilog interface, depending on the selected target language.

When the target language is VHDL, the generated interface includes

- An entity definition. The entity defines ports (input, output, and clock) corresponding in name and data type to the ports configured on the HDL Cosimulation block. Clock enable and reset ports are also declared.
- An RTL architecture including a component declaration, a component configuration declaring signals corresponding to signals connected to the HDL Cosimulation ports, and a component instantiation.
- Port assignment statements as required by the model.

When the target language is Verilog, the generated interface includes

- A module defining ports (input, output, and clock) corresponding in name and data type to the ports configured on the HDL Cosimulation block. The module also defines clock enable and reset ports, and wire declarations corresponding to signals connected to the HDL Cosimulation ports.
- A module instance.

• Port assignment statements as required by the model.

The requirements for using the HDL Cosimulation block for code generation are the same as those for cosimulation. If you want to check these conditions before initiating code generation, select **Update Diagram** from the Simulink **Edit** menu.

# **Pass-Through and No-Op Implementations**

Simulink HDL Coder provides special-purpose implementations for subsystems that let you use a subsystem as a wire, or simply omit a subsystem entirely, in the generated HDL code. These implementations are summarized in the following table.

| Implementation                     | Description  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| hdldefaults.PassThroughHDLEmission | Provides a pass-through implementation in which<br>the subsystem's inputs are passed directly to its<br>outputs. (In effect, the block becomes a wire in the<br>HDL code.) |
| hdldefaults.NoHDLEmission          | Completely removes the block from the generated code. Lets you use the block in simulation but treat it as a no-op in the HDL code.  |

Simulink HDL Coder uses these implementations for many built-in blocks (such as Scopes and Assertions) that are significant in simulation but would be meaningless in HDL code.



# Stateflow HDL Code Generation Support

Overview of Stateflow HDL Code Generation (p. 8-2)

A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation (p. 8-5)

Mapping Stateflow Chart Semantics to HDL (p. 8-9)

Using Mealy and Moore Machine Types in HDL Code Generation (p. 8-16)

Structuring a Model for HDL Code Generation (p. 8-25)

Design Patterns Using Advanced Stateflow Features (p. 8-31) Introduction and pointers to demos and other information

Requirements for Stateflow charts used in HDL code generation; restrictions and limitations

How Stateflow semantics are represented in generated HDL code; rationale for restrictions on Stateflow charts that target HDL code generation

Considerations for generating HDL code from Mealy and Moore state machines

Interfacing a Stateflow chart with Simulink for HDL Code Generation

Design patterns that take advantage of advanced Stateflow features for efficient HDL code generation

# **Overview of Stateflow HDL Code Generation**

Stateflow is a powerful graphical design and development tool for solving complex control and supervisory logic problems. Stateflow provides concise descriptions of complex system behavior using hierarchical finite state machine (FSM) theory, flow diagram notation, and state-transition diagrams.

You use a Stateflow chart to model a finite state machine or a complex control algorithm intended for realization as an ASIC or FPGA. When the model meets design requirements, you use Simulink HDL Coder to generate HDL code that implements the design embodied in the model. Simulink HDL Coder generates HDL code (VHDL or Verilog) from Stateflow charts. You can simulate and synthesize generated HDL code using industry standard tools, and then map your system designs into FPGAs and ASICs.

The Stateflow HDL code generator is designed to

- Support the largest possible subset of Stateflow semantics that is consistent with HDL. This broad subset lets you generate HDL code from existing models without significant remodeling effort.
- Generate bit-true, cycle-accurate HDL code that is fully compatible with Stateflow simulation semantics.

In general, generation of VHDL or Verilog code from a model containing a Stateflow chart does not differ greatly from HDL code generation from any other model. However, there are a few special considerations related to Stateflow HDL code generation. This chapter describes them, in the following sections:

- "A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation" on page 8-5 summarizes requirements and restrictions that apply to Stateflow charts intended for use in HDL code generation. Simulink HDL Coder supports a subset of Stateflow that is suitable for HDL code generation. The requirements and restrictions guarantee that a model can be successfully generated as HDL and that simulation results between Simulink and EDA tools will match.
- "Mapping Stateflow Chart Semantics to HDL" on page 8-9 discusses how Stateflow features map onto HDL constructs. The sections also describes aspects of Stateflow that do not lend themselves to hardware realization.

- "Structuring a Model for HDL Code Generation" on page 8-25 describes the interface between your Simulink model and your Stateflow chart that is required when generating HDL code.
- "Using Mealy and Moore Machine Types in HDL Code Generation" on page 8-16 describes the advantages of using Mealy or Moore charts as an alternative to Classic charts when generating HDL code.
- "Design Patterns Using Advanced Stateflow Features" on page 8-31 provides examples of the use of Stateflow extensions such as graphical functions, truth tables, and temporal logic in HDL code generation.

## **Demos and Related Documentation**

#### Demos

Simulink HDL Coder provides several demos illustrating HDL code generation from subsystems that include Stateflow charts. These demos are:

- Greatest Common Divisor
- Pipelined Configurable FIR
- 2D FDTD Behavioral Model
- CPU Behavioral Model

To open the demo models, type the following command at the MATLAB prompt:

demos

This command opens the **Help** window. In the **Demos** pane on the left, select **Simulink > Simulink HDL Coder**. Then, double-click the icon for any of the following demos, and follow the instructions in the demo window.

#### **Related Documentation**

If you are familiar with Stateflow and Simulink but have not yet tried Simulink HDL Coder, see the hands-on exercises in Chapter 2, "Introduction to HDL Code Generation".

If you are not familiar with Stateflow, see *Getting Started with Stateflow*.

For a comprehensive guide to Stateflow features, see the *Stateflow and Stateflow Coder User's Guide*.

# A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation

- "Stateflow to Simulink Interface" on page 8-5
- "Data Type Usage" on page 8-5
- "Chart Initialization" on page 8-6
- "Registered Output" on page 8-6
- "Restrictions on Imported Code" on page 8-6
- "Other Restrictions" on page 8-7

This section summarizes the requirements and restrictions you should follow when configuring Stateflow charts that are intended to target HDL code generation. "Mapping Stateflow Chart Semantics to HDL" on page 8-9 provides a more detailed rationale for most of these requirements.

## Stateflow to Simulink Interface

A Stateflow chart intended for HDL code generation must be part of a Simulink subsystem. See "Structuring a Model for HDL Code Generation" on page 8-25 for an example.

# Data Type Usage

### Supported Data Types

The current release supports a subset of MATLAB data types in Stateflow charts intended for use in HDL code generation. Supported data types are

- Signed and unsigned integer
- Double and single
- Fixed point
- Boolean

**Note** Multidimensional arrays of these types are supported, with the exception of data types assigned to ports. Port data types must be either scalar or vector.

## **Chart Initialization**

In Stateflow charts intended for HDL code generation, enable the chart property **Execute (enter) Chart at Initialization**. When this property is enabled, default transitions are tested and all actions reachable from the default transition taken are executed. These actions correspond to the reset process in HDL code. "Executing a Chart at Initialization" in the Stateflow documentation describes existing restrictions under this property.

The reset action must not entail the delay of combinatorial logic. Therefore, do not perform arithmetic in initialization actions.

### **Registered Output**

Stateflow provides the **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** chart property specifically for HDL code generation. This property lets you control whether output is persistent (stored in registers) from one sample time to the next. Such use of registers is termed *registered output*.

When the **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** option is deselected (the default), registered output is used.

When the **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** option is selected, registered output is not used. A default initial value (defined in the **Initial value** field of the **Value Attributes** pane of the Data Properties dialog box) is given to each output when the chart wakes up. This assignment guarantees that there is no reference to outputs computed in previous time steps.

#### **Restrictions on Imported Code**

A Stateflow HDL chart must be entirely self-contained. The following restrictions apply:

- Do not call MATLAB functions other than min or max.
- Do not use MATLAB workspace data.
- Do not call C math functions
- If the **Enable C-like bit operations** property is disabled, do not use the exponentiation operator (^). The exponentiation operator is implemented with the C Math Library function pow.
- Do not include custom code. Any information entered in the Target Options dialog box is ignored.

## **Other Restrictions**

Simulink HDL Coder imposes a number of additional restrictions on the use of classic Stateflow features. These limitations exist because HDL does not support some features of general-purpose sequential programming languages.

• Do not define machine-parented data, machine-parented events, or local events in a Stateflow chart from which HDL code is to be generated.

Do not use the following implicit events:

- enter
- exit
- change

You can use the following implicit events:

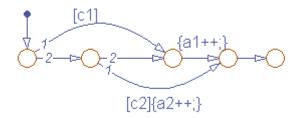
- wakeup
- tick

Temporal logic can be used provided the base events are limited to these types of implicit events.

- Do not use recursion through graphical functions. Simulink HDL Coder does not currently support recursion.
- Do not explicitly use loops other than for loops, such as in flow diagrams.

Only constant-bounded loops are supported for HDL code generation. See the Stateflow FOR Loop demo (sf\_for.mdl) to learn how to create a for loop using a graphical function.

• HDL does not support a goto statement. Therefore, do not use unstructured flow diagrams, such as the flow diagram shown in the following figure.



- Do not read from output ports if outputs are not registered. (Outputs are not registered if the **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** option is selected. See also "Registered Output" on page 8-6.)
- Do not use Data Store Memory objects.
- Do not use pointer (&) or indirection (\*) operators. See the discussion of "Pointer and Address Operations" in the Stateflow documentation.
- If a Stateflow chart gets a runtime overflow error during simulation, it is possible to disable data range error checking and generate HDL code for the chart. However, in such cases Simulink HDL Coder cannot guarantee that results obtained from the generated HDL code are bit-true to results obtained from the simulation. Recommended practice is to enable overflow checking and eliminate overflow conditions from the model during simulation.

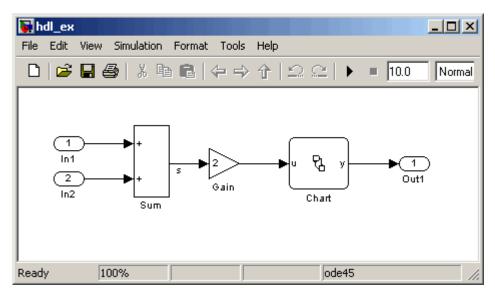
# **Mapping Stateflow Chart Semantics to HDL**

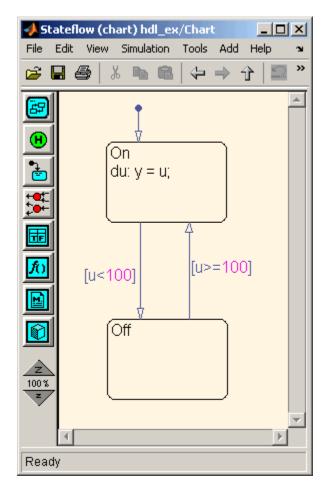
- "Software Realization of Stateflow Semantics" on page 8-9
- "Hardware Realization of Stateflow Semantics" on page 8-11
- "Restrictions for HDL Realization" on page 8-14

# **Software Realization of Stateflow Semantics**

The top-down semantics of a Stateflow chart describe how the chart executes. chart semantics describe an explicit sequential execution order for elements of the chart, such as states and transitions. These deterministic, sequential semantics map naturally to sequential programming languages, such as C. To support the rich semantics of a Stateflow chart in the Simulink environment, it is necessary to combine the state variable updates and output computation in a single function that Simulink can call.

Consider the example mode shown in the following figure. The root level of the model contains three blocks (Sum, Gain and a Stateflow chart) connected in series.





The Stateflow chart from the model is shown in the following figure.

The following C code excerpt was generated by Real Time Workshop from this example model. The code illustrates how the Stateflow chart combines the output computation and state-variable update.

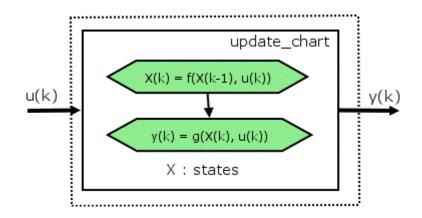
```
/* Output and update for atomic system: '<Root>/Chart' */
void hdl_ex_Chart(void)
{
    /* Stateflow: '<Root>/Chart' */
```

```
switch (hdl_ex_DWork.Chart.is_c1_hdl_ex) {
  case hdl_ex_IN_Off:
   if (hdl_ex_B.Gain >= 100.0) {
      hdl_ex_DWork.Chart.is_c1_hdl_ex = (uint8_T)hdl_ex_IN_On;
   }
   break;
  case hdl_ex_IN_On:
   if (hdl_ex_B.Gain < 100.0) {
      hdl_ex_DWork.Chart.is_c1_hdl_ex = (uint8_T)hdl_ex_IN_Off;
   } else {
     hdl_ex_B.y = hdl_ex_B.Gain;
   }
   break;
  default:
   hdl_ex_DWork.Chart.is_c1_hdl_ex = (uint8_T)hdl_ex_IN_On;
   break;
 }
}
```

The preceding code assigns either the state or the output, but not both. Values of output variables, as well as state, persist from one time step to another. If an output value is not assigned during a chart execution, the output simply retains its value (as defined in a previous execution).

## Hardware Realization of Stateflow Semantics

The following diagram shows a sequential implementation of Stateflow semantics for output/update computations, appropriate for targeting the C language.



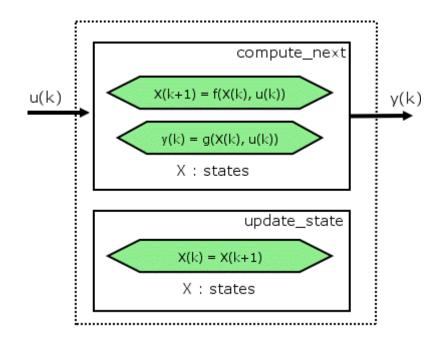
A mapping from Stateflow semantics to an HDL implementation demands a different approach. The following requirements must be met:

- **Requirement 1**: Hardware designs require separability of output and state update functions.
- **Requirement 2**: HDL is a concurrent language. To achieve the goal of bit-true simulation, execution ordering must be correct.

To meet Requirement 1, an FSM is coded in HDL as two concurrent blocks that execute under different conditions. One block evaluates the transition conditions, computes outputs and speculatively computes the next state variables. The other block updates the current state variables from the available next state and performs the actual state transitions. This second block is activated only on the trigger edge of the clock signal, or an asynchronous reset signal.

In practice, output computations usually occur more often than state updates. The presence of inputs drives the computation of outputs. State transitions occur at regular intervals (whenever the chart is activated).

The following diagram shows a concurrent implementation of Stateflow semantics for output and update computations, appropriate for targeting HDL.



The HDL code generator reuses the original single-function implementation of Stateflow semantics almost without modification. There is one important difference: instead of computing with state variables directly, all state computations are performed on local shadow variables. These variables are local to the HDL function update\_chart. At the beginning of the update\_chart functions, current\_state is copied into the shadow variables. At the end of the update\_chart function, the newly computed state is transferred to registers called collectively next\_state. The values held in these registers are copied to current\_state (also registered) when update state is called.

By using local variables, this approach maps Stateflow sequential semantics to HDL sequential statements, avoiding the use of concurrent statements. For instance, Stateflow local variables in function scope map to VHDL variables in process scope. In VHDL, variable assignment is sequential. Therefore, statements in a Stateflow function that uses local variables can safely map to statements in a VHDL process that uses corresponding variables. The VHDL assignments execute in the same order as the assignments in the Stateflow function. The execution sequence is automatically correct.

## **Restrictions for HDL Realization**

Some restrictions on Stateflow usage are required to achieve a valid mapping from Stateflow to HDL code. These are summarized briefly in "A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation" on page 8-5. The following sections give a more detailed rationale for most of these restrictions.

#### **Self-Contained Stateflow Charts**

The Stateflow C target allows generated code to have some dependencies on code or data that is external to the chart. Stateflow charts intended for HDL code generation, however, must be self-contained. Observe the following rules for creating self-contained charts:

- Do not use C math functions such as sin and pow. There is no HDL counterpart to the C math library.
- Do not use calls to functions coded in M or any language other than HDL. For example, do not call M functions for a simulation target, as in the following statement:

```
ml.disp( hello )
```

• Do not use custom code. Stateflow does not provide a mechanism for embedding external HDL code into Stateflow generated HDL code. Custom C code (user-written C code intended for linkage with C code generated from a Stateflow chart) is ignored during HDL code generation.

See also Chapter 7, "Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code".

- Do not use pointer (&) or indirection (\*) operators. Pointer and indirection operators have no function in the Stateflow action language in the absence of custom code. Also, pointer and indirection operators do not map directly to synthesizable HDL.
- Do not share data (via machine-parented data or Data Store Memory blocks) between charts. Simulink HDL Coder does not map such global data to HDL, because HDL does not support global data.

#### Stateflow Charts Must Not Use Features Unsupported by HDL

When creating Stateflow charts intended for HDL code generation, follow these guidelines to avoid using Stateflow language features that cannot be mapped to HDL:

- Avoid recursion. While Stateflow permits recursion (through both event processing and user-written recursive graphical functions), HDL does not allow recursion.
- Do not use Stateflow machine-parented and local events. These event types do not have equivalents in HDL. Therefore, these event types are not supported for HDL code generation.
- Avoid unstructured code. Although Stateflow allows unstructured code to be written (through transition flow diagrams and graphical functions), this usage results in goto statements and multiple function return statements. HDL does not support either goto statements or multiple function return statements.
- Select the **Execute (enter) Chart At Initialization** chart property. This option executes the update chart function immediately following chart initialization. The option is needed for HDL because outputs must be available at time 0 (hardware reset). You must select this option to ensure bit-true HDL code generation.

# Using Mealy and Moore Machine Types in HDL Code Generation

- "Generating HDL for a Mealy Finite State Machine" on page 8-17
- "Generating HDL Code for a Moore Finite State Machine" on page 8-20

Stateflow supports modeling of three types of state machines:

- Classic (default)
- Mealy
- Moore

This section discusses issues you should consider when generating HDL code for Mealy and Moore state machines. See "Building Mealy and Moore Charts in Stateflow" in the Stateflow documentation for detailed information on Mealy and Moore state machines.

Mealy and Moore state machines differ in the following ways:

- The outputs of a Mealy state machine are a function of the current state and inputs.
- The outputs of a Moore state machine are a function of the current state only.

Moore and Mealy state charts can be functionally equivalent; an equivalent Mealy chart can derive from a Moore chart, and vice versa. A Mealy state machine has a richer description and usually requires a smaller number of states.

The principal advantages of using Mealy or Moore charts as an alternative to Classic charts are:

- Stateflow verifies the Mealy and Moore charts you create to ensure that they conform to their formal definitions and semantic rules. Stateflow reports violations at compile time (not at design time).
- Moore charts provide a more efficient implementation of Stateflow than Classic charts, for both C and HDL targets.

The execution of a Mealy or Moore chart at time t is the evaluation of the function represented by that chart at time t. The initialization property for output ensures that every output is defined at every time step. Specifically, the output of a Mealy or Moore chart at one time step must not depend on the output of the chart at an earlier time step.

Consider the outputs of a Stateflow chart. Stateflow permits output latching. That is, the value of an output computed at time t persists until time t+d, when it is overwritten. The output latching feature in Stateflow corresponds to registered outputs. Therefore, Mealy and Moore charts intended for HDL code generation should not use registered outputs.

## Generating HDL for a Mealy Finite State Machine

When generating HDL code for a chart that models a Mealy state machine, make sure that

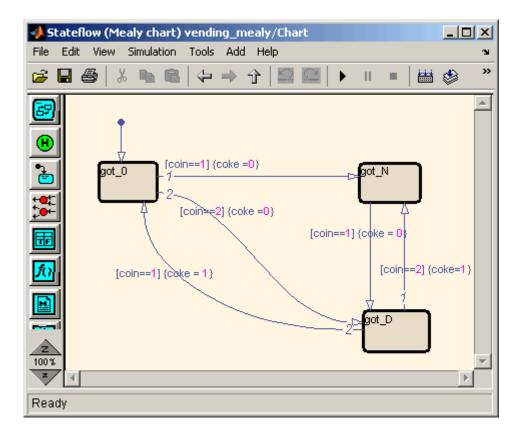
- The chart meets all general code generation requirements, as described in "A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation" on page 8-5.
- The **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** option is selected. This option is selected automatically when the Mealy option is selected from the **State Machine Type** pop-up menu, as shown in the following figure.

| 🙀 Mealy Chart: Chart   | < |
|--|---|
| Name: <u>Chart</u><br>Machine: <u>(machine) vending mealy</u>  | - |
| State Machine Type: Mealy                                      |   |
| Update method: Inh Classic<br>Mealy<br>Moore                   |   |
| Enable C-bit operations     Apply to all charts in machine now |   |
| User specified state/transition execution order                |   |
| 🔲 Export Chart Level Graphical Functions (Make Global)         |   |
| Use Strong Data Typing with Simulink I/O                       |   |
| 🔽 Execute (enter) Chart At Initialization                      |   |
| 🔽 Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up                 |   |
| Debugger breakpoint: 🔽 On chart entry 🔽 Lock Editor            |   |
| Description:   |   |
|  | - |
| OK Cancel Help Apply   |   |

• Actions are associated with transitions inner and outer transitions only.

Mealy actions are associated with transitions. In Mealy machines, output computation is expected to be driven by the change on inputs. In fact, the dependence of output on input is the fundamental distinguishing factor between the formal definitions of Mealy and Moore machines. The requirement that actions be given on transitions is to some degree stylistic, rather than necessary to enforce Mealy semantics. However, it is natural that output computation follows input conditions on input, because transition conditions are primarily input conditions in any machine type.

The following figure shows an example of a Stateflow chart that models a Mealy state machine.



The following code example lists the VHDL process code generated for the Mealy chart.

```
Chart : PROCESS (is_Chart, coin)

-- local variables

BEGIN

is_Chart_next <= is_Chart;

coke <= '0';

CASE is_Chart IS

WHEN IN_got_0 =>

IF coin = 1.0 THEN

coke <= '0';
```

```
is_Chart_next <= IN_got_N;</pre>
        ELSIF coin = 2.0 THEN
             coke <= '0';
             is_Chart_next <= IN_got_D;</pre>
        END IF;
    WHEN IN_got_D =>
        IF coin = 2.0 THEN
             coke <= '1';
             is_Chart_next <= IN_got_N;</pre>
        ELSIF coin = 1.0 THEN
             coke <= '1';
             is_Chart_next <= IN_got_0;</pre>
        END IF;
    WHEN IN_got_N =>
        IF coin = 1.0 THEN
             coke <= '0';
             is_Chart_next <= IN_got_D;</pre>
        END IF;
    WHEN OTHERS =>
        is_Chart_next <= IN_got_0;</pre>
END CASE;
```

END PROCESS Chart;

### Generating HDL Code for a Moore Finite State Machine

When generating HDL code for a chart that models a Moore state machine, make sure that

• The chart meets all general code generation requirements, as described in "A Quick Guide to Requirements for Stateflow HDL Code Generation" on page 8-5.

• The **Initialize Outputs Every Time Chart Wakes Up** option is selected. This option is selected automatically when the Moore option is selected from the **State Machine Type** pop-up menu, as shown in the following figure.

| 🙀 Moore Chart: Chart                                      |                                    | ×     |
|---|------------------------------------|-------|
| Name: <u>Chart</u><br>Machine: <u>(machine) moore mac</u> | <u>thine_2</u>                     | -     |
| State Machine Type: Moore                                 |                                    |       |
| Update method: Inh Classic<br>Mealy                       |                                    |       |
| Moore<br>Enable C-bit operations                          | Apply to all charts in machine now |       |
|   | rippy to an onlarte in machine nem |       |
| 🔲 User specified state/transition                         | n execution order                  |       |
| 🔲 Export Chart Level Graphica                             | l Functions (Make Global)          |       |
| 🔽 Use Strong Data Typing with                             | n Simulink I/O                     |       |
| 💌 Execute (enter) Chart At Initi                          | alization                          |       |
| 🔽 Initialize Outputs Every Time                           | Chart Wakes Up                     |       |
| Debugger breakpoint: 🔲 On cl                              | nart entry 🔽 Lock Editor           |       |
| Description:  |                                    |       |
|   |                                    |       |
|   |                                    |       |
| 01  | Cancel Help                        | Apply |

• Actions occur in states only. These actions are unlabeled, and execute when exiting the states or remaining in the states.

Moore actions must be associated with states, because output computation must be dependent only on states, not input. Therefore, the current configuration of active states at time step t determines output. Thus, the single action in a Moore state serves as both during and exit action. If state S is active when a chart wakes up at time t, it contributes to the output whether it remains active into time t+1 or not.

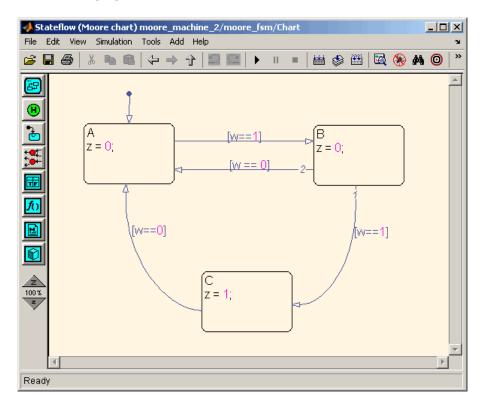
• No local data or graphical functions are used.

Function calls and local data are not allowed in a Moore chart. This ensures that output does not depend on input in ways that would be difficult for the HDL code generator to verify. These restrictions strongly encourage coding practices that separate output and input.

- No references to input occur outside of transition conditions.
- Output computation occurs only in leaf states.

This restriction guarantees that Stateflow's top-down semantics compute outputs as if actions were evaluated strictly before inner and outer flow diagrams.

The following figure shows a Stateflow chart of a Moore state machine.



The following code example illustrates generated Verilog code for the Moore chart.

```
Chart : PROCESS (is_Chart, w)
        -- local variables
       VARIABLE is_Chart_temp : T_state_type_is_Chart;
   BEGIN
        is_Chart_temp := is_Chart;
        z <= '0';
        CASE is_Chart_temp IS
            WHEN IN_A =>
                z <= '0';
            WHEN IN_B =>
                z <= '0';
            WHEN IN_C =>
                z <= '1';
            WHEN OTHERS =>
                is_Chart_temp := IN_NO_ACTIVE_CHILD;
        END CASE;
        CASE is_Chart_temp IS
            WHEN IN_A =>
                IF w = '1' THEN
                    is_Chart_temp := IN_B;
                END IF;
            WHEN IN_B =>
                IF w = '1' THEN
                    is_Chart_temp := IN_C;
                ELSIF w = '0' THEN
                    is_Chart_temp := IN_A;
                END IF;
            WHEN IN_C =>
                IF w = '0' THEN
                    is_Chart_temp := IN_A;
                END IF;
```

```
WHEN OTHERS =>
    is_Chart_temp := IN_A;
END CASE;
is_Chart_next <= is_Chart_temp;
END PROCESS Chart;</pre>
```

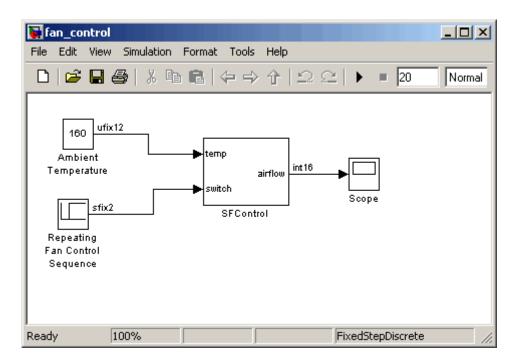
# Structuring a Model for HDL Code Generation

In general, generation of VHDL or Verilog code from a model containing a Stateflow chart does not differ greatly from HDL code generation from any other model.

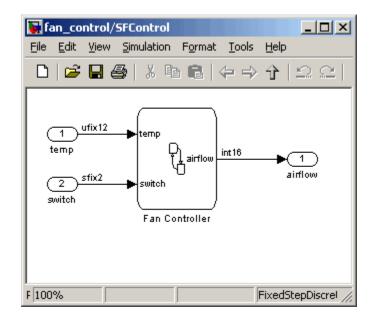
A Stateflow chart intended for HDL code generation *must* be part of a Simulink subsystem that represents the Device Under Test (DUT). The DUT corresponds to the top level VHDL entity or Verilog module for which code is generated, tested and eventually synthesized. The top level components in Simulink that drive the DUT correspond to the behavioral Simulink test bench.

You may need to restructure your models to meet this requirement. If the Stateflow chart for which you want to generate code is at the root level of your model, embed the chart in a subsystem and connect the appropriate signals to the subsystem inputs and outputs. In most cases, you can do this by simply clicking on the chart and then selecting **Edit > Create Subsystem** in the model window.

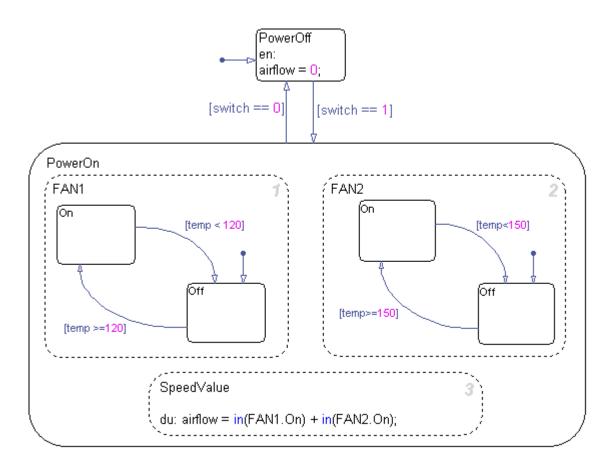
As an example of a properly structured model, consider the fan\_control model shown in the following figure. In this model, the subsystem SFControl is the DUT. Two input signals drive the DUT.



The SFControl subsystem, shown in the following figure, contains a Stateflow chart, Fan Controller. The chart that has two inputs and an output.



The Fan Controller chart, shown in the following figure, models a simple system that monitors input temperature data (temp) and turns on the two fans (FAN1 and FAN2) based on the range of the temperature. A manual override input (switch) is provided to turn the fans off forcibly. At each time step the Fan Controller outputs a value (airflow) representing the number of fans that are turned on.



The following makehdl command generates VHDL code (by default) for the subsystem containing the Stateflow chart.

```
makehdl(`fan_control/SF_Control')
```

As code generation for this subsystem proceeds, Simulink HDL Coder displays progress messages as shown in the following listing:

### Begin VHDL Code Generation
### Working on fan\_control/SFControl as hdlsrc\SFControl.vhd

```
### Working on fan_control/SFControl/Fan Controller as hdlsrc\Fan_Controller.vhd
Stateflow parsing for model "fan_control"...Done
Stateflow code generation for model "fan_control"...Done
### HDL Code Generation Complete.
```

As the progress messages indicate, Simulink HDL Coder generates a separate code file for each level of hierarchy in the model. The following VHDL files are written to the target directory, hdlsrc:

- Fan\_Controller.vhd contains the entity and architecture code (Fan\_Controller) for the Stateflow chart.
- SFControl.vhd contains the code for the top level subsystem. This file also instantiates a Fan\_Controller component.

Simulink HDL Coder also generates a number of other files (such as scripts for HDL simulation and synthesis tools) in the target directory. See the "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13 for full details on generated files.

The following code excerpt shows the entity declaration generated for the Fan\_Controller Stateflow chart inFan\_Controller.vhd.

This model shows the use of fixed point data types without scaling (e.g. ufix12, sfix2), as supported by Stateflow for HDL code generation. At the entity/instantiation boundary, all signals in the generated code are typed as std\_logic or std\_logic\_vector, following general VHDL coding standard

conventions. In the architecture body, these signals are assigned to the corresponding typed signals for further manipulation and access.

# **Design Patterns Using Advanced Stateflow Features**

- "Temporal Logic" on page 8-31
- "Graphical Function" on page 8-34
- "Hierarchy and Parallelism" on page 8-36
- "Stateless Charts" on page 8-40
- "Truth Tables" on page 8-43

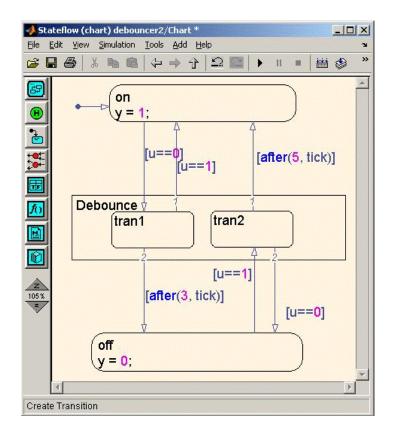
The following sections describe several design patterns that will help you to use advanced Stateflow features to generate efficient HDL code.

## **Temporal Logic**

Stateflow temporal logic operators (such as after, before, or every) are Boolean operators that operate on recurrence counts of Stateflow events. Temporal logic operators can appear only in conditions on transitions that from states, and in state actions. Although temporal logic does not introduce any new events into a Stateflow model, it is useful to think of the change of value of a temporal logic condition as an event. You can use temporal logic operators in many cases where a counter is required. A common use case would be to use temporal logic to implement a time-out counter.

For detailed information about Stateflow temporal logic, see "Using Temporal Logic in Actions" in the Stateflow documentation.

The chart shown in the following figure uses temporal logic in a design for a debouncer. Instead of instantaneously switching between on and off states, the chart uses two intermediate states and temporal logic to ignore transients. The transition is committed based on a time-out.



The following code excerpt shows VHDL code generated from this chart.

```
Chart : PROCESS (is_Chart, temporalCounter_i1, y_reg, u)
         -- local variables
         VARIABLE temporalCounter_i1_temp : unsigned(7 DOWNTO 0);
BEGIN
         is_Chart_next <= is_Chart;
         y_reg_next <= y_reg;
         temporalCounter_i1_temp := temporalCounter_i1;

         IF temporalCounter_i1_temp < to_unsigned(7, 8) THEN
            temporalCounter_i1_temp :=
         tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(temporalCounter_i1_temp, 9), 10)
         + tmw to_unsigned(to_unsigned(1, 9), 10), 8);
</pre>
```

```
END IF;
CASE is_Chart IS
    WHEN IN_tran1 =>
        IF u = '1' THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_on;</pre>
             y_reg_next <= '1';</pre>
        ELSIF temporalCounter_i1_temp >= to_unsigned(3, 8) THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_off;</pre>
             y_reg_next <= '0';</pre>
        END IF;
    WHEN IN_tran2 =>
        IF temporalCounter_i1_temp >= to_unsigned(5, 8) THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_on;</pre>
             <prey_next <= '1';</pre>
        ELSIF u = '0' THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_off;</pre>
             y_reg_next <= '0';</pre>
        END IF;
    WHEN IN_off =>
        IF u = '1' THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_tran2;</pre>
             temporalCounter_i1_temp := to_unsigned(0, 8);
        END IF;
    WHEN IN_on =>
        IF u = '0' THEN
             is_Chart_next <= IN_tran1;</pre>
             temporalCounter_i1_temp := to_unsigned(0, 8);
        END IF;
    WHEN OTHERS =>
        is_Chart_next <= IN_on;</pre>
```

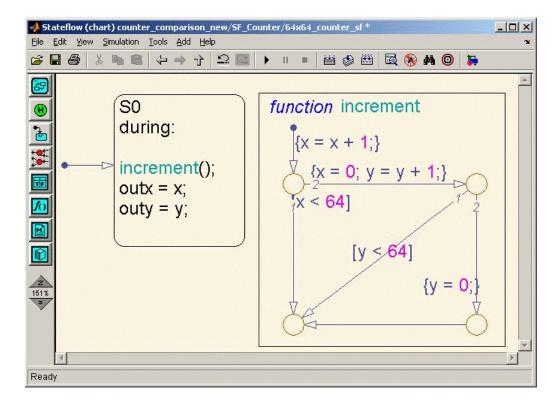
```
y_reg_next <= '1';
END CASE;
temporalCounter_i1_next <= temporalCounter_i1_temp;
END PROCESS Chart;
```

# **Graphical Function**

A Stateflow graphical function is a function defined graphically by a flow diagram. Graphical functions reside in a Stateflow chart along with the diagrams that invoke them. Like MATLAB and C functions, graphical functions can accept arguments and return results. Graphical functions can be invoked in transition and state actions.

The "Stateflow Notation" chapter of the Stateflow documentation includes a detailed description of graphical functions.

The following figure shows a graphical function that implements a 64–by–64 counter.



The following code excerpt shows VHDL code generated for this graphical function.

```
x64_counter_sf : PROCESS (x, y, outx_reg, outy_reg)
    -- local variables
    VARIABLE x_temp : unsigned(7 DOWNTO 0);
    VARIABLE y_temp : unsigned(7 DOWNTO 0);
BEGIN
    outx_reg_next <= outx_reg;
    outy_reg_next <= outy_reg;
    x_temp := x;
    y_temp := y;
    x_temp := tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(x_temp, 9), 10)
+ tmw_to_unsigned(to_unsigned(1, 9), 10), 8);</pre>
```

IF x\_temp < to\_unsigned(64, 8) THEN</pre>

```
NULL;
    ELSE
        x_temp := to_unsigned(0, 8);
        y_temp := tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(y_temp, 9), 10)
  + tmw_to_unsigned(to_unsigned(1, 9), 10), 8);
        IF y_temp < to_unsigned(64, 8) THEN</pre>
             NULL;
        ELSE
             y_temp := to_unsigned(0, 8);
        END IF;
    END IF;
    outx_reg_next <= x_temp;</pre>
    outy_reg_next <= y_temp;</pre>
    x_next <= x_temp;</pre>
    y_next <= y_temp;</pre>
END PROCESS x64_counter_sf;
```

## **Hierarchy and Parallelism**

Stateflow charts support both hierarchy (states containing other states) and parallelism (multiple states that can be active simultaneously).

Parallelism, in Stateflow, is not synonymous with concurrency. In Stateflow semantics, parallel states can be active simultaneously, but they are executed sequentially according to their execution order. (Execution order is displayed on the upper right corner of a parallel state).

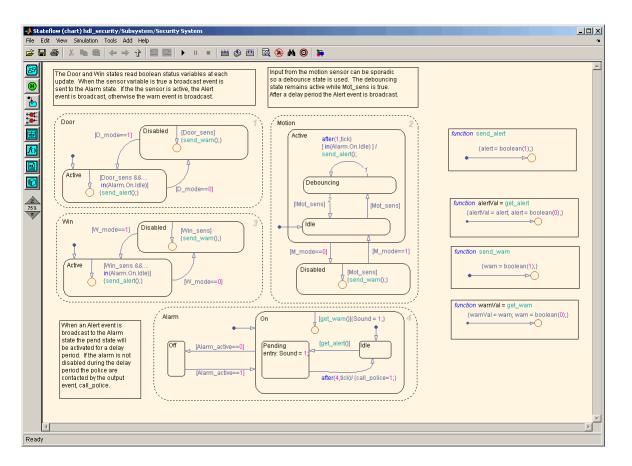
For detailed information on hierarchy and parallelism, see "Stateflow Hierarchy of Objects" and "Execution Order for Parallel States" in the Stateflow documentation.

For HDL code generation, an entire chart maps to a single output computation process. Within the output computation process:

- The execution of parallel states proceeds sequentially.
- Nested hierarchical states map to nested CASE statements in the generated HDL code.

The following figure shows a chart that models a security system. The chart contains

- Simultaneously active parallel states (in order of execution: Door, Motion, Win, Alarm).
- Hierarchy, where the parallel states contain child states. For example, the Motion state contains Active and Inactive states, and the Active state contains further nested states (Debouncing and Idle).
- Graphical functions (such as send\_alert and send\_warn) that set and reset flags, simulating broadcast and reception of events. These functions are used, rather than Stateflow local events, because local events are not supported for HDL code generation.



The following VHDL code excerpt was generated for the parallel Door and Motion states from this chart. The higher-level CASE statements corresponding to Door and Motion are generated sequentially to match Stateflow simulation semantics. The hierarchy of nested states maps to nested CASE statements in VHDL.

```
CASE is_Door IS

WHEN IN_Active =>

IF D_mode = '0' THEN

is_Door_next <= IN_Disabled;

ELSIF tmw to boolean(Door sens AND tmw to stdlogic(is On = IN Idle)) THEN
```

```
alert_temp := '1';
          END IF;
        WHEN IN_Disabled =>
            IF D_mode = '1' THEN
                is_Door_next <= IN_Active;</pre>
            ELSIF tmw_to_boolean(Door_sens) THEN
                warn_temp := '1';
            END IF;
        WHEN OTHERS =>
            --On the first sample call the door mode is set to active.
            is_Door_next <= IN_Active;</pre>
   END CASE;
   --This state models the modes of a motion detector sensor and implements logic
-- to respond when that sensor is producing a signal.
   CASE is_Motion IS
        WHEN IN_Active =>
            IF M_mode = '0' THEN
                is_Active_next <= IN_NO_ACTIVE_CHILD;</pre>
                is_Motion_next <= IN_Disabled;</pre>
            ELSE
                CASE is_Active IS
                    WHEN IN_Debouncing =>
                        IF tmw_to_boolean(('1' AND tmw_to_stdlogic(temporalCounter_i2_temp >=
        to_unsigned(1, 8))) AND tmw_to_stdlogic(is_On = IN_Idle))
       THEN
                             alert_temp := '1';
                             is_Active_next <= IN_Debouncing;</pre>
                             temporalCounter_i2_temp := to_unsigned(0, 8);
                        ELSIF tmw_to_boolean( NOT Mot_sens) THEN
                             is_Active_next <= b_IN_Idle;</pre>
                        END IF;
```

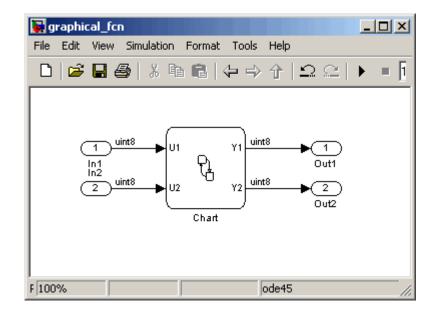
## **Stateless Charts**

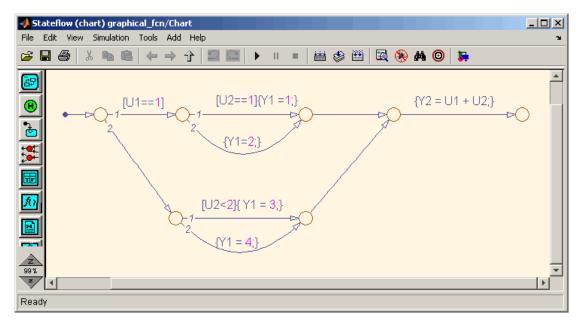
Stateflow charts consisting of pure flow diagrams (i.e., charts having no states ) are useful in capturing if-then-else constructs used in procedural languages like C. The "Stateflow Notation" chapter in the Stateflow documentation discusses flow diagrams in detail.

As an example, consider the following logic, expressed in C-like pseudocode.

```
if(U1==1) {
    if(U2==1) {
        Y = 1;
        }else{
        Y = 2;
    }
}else{
    if(U2<2) {
        Y = 3;
    }else{
        Y = 4;
    }
    }
}</pre>
```

The following figures illustrate how to model this control flow using a stateless Stateflow chart. The root model contains a subsystem and inputs and outputs to the chart.





The following figure shows the Stateflow flow diagram that implements the if-then-else logic.

The following generated VHDL code excerpt shows the nested IF-ELSE statements obtained from the flow diagram.

```
Chart : PROCESS (Y1_reg, Y2_reg, U1, U2)

-- local variables

BEGIN

Y1_reg_next <= Y1_reg;

Y2_reg_next <= Y2_reg;

IF unsigned(U1) = to_unsigned(1, 8) THEN

IF unsigned(U2) = to_unsigned(1, 8) THEN

Y1_reg_next <= to_unsigned(1, 8);

ELSE

Y1_reg_next <= to_unsigned(2, 8);

END IF;
```

```
ELSIF unsigned(U2) < to_unsigned(2, 8) THEN
    Y1_reg_next <= to_unsigned(3, 8);
ELSE
    Y1_reg_next <= to_unsigned(4, 8);
END IF;

Y2_reg_next <= tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(unsigned(U1), 9), 10)
  + tmw_to_unsigned(tmw_to_unsigned(U2), 9), 10), 8);
END PROCESS Chart;</pre>
```

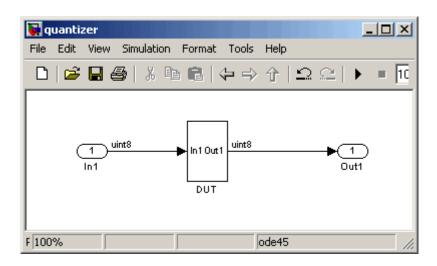
## **Truth Tables**

Stateflow Truth Table functions (see "Truth Table Functions" in the Stateflow documentation) are well-suited for implementing compact combinatorial logic. A typical application for Truth Tables is to implement nonlinear quantization or threshold logic. Consider the following logic:

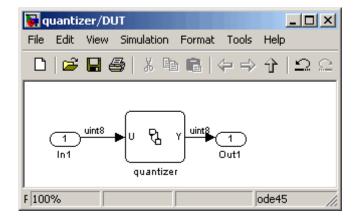
| Y | = | 1 | when | 0  | <= | U | <= | 10 |
|---|---|---|------|----|----|---|----|----|
| Y | = | 2 | when | 10 | <  | U | <= | 17 |
| Y | = | 3 | when | 17 | <  | U | <= | 45 |
| Y | = | 4 | when | 45 | <  | U | <= | 52 |
| Y | = | 5 | when | 52 | <  | U |    |    |

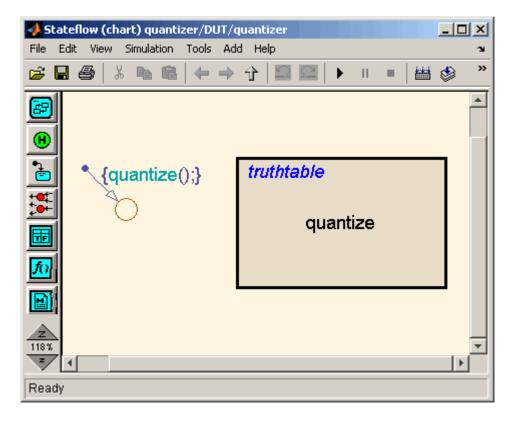
A stateless chart with a single call to a Truth Table function can represent this logic succinctly.

The following figure shows a model containing a subsystem, DUT.



The subsystem contains a chart, quantizer, as shown in the following figure.





The next figure shows the quantizer chart, containing the Truth Table.

The following figure shows the threshold logic, as displayed in the Truth Table Editor.

|   |                        | zer/DUT/quantizer.quantize                      |    |      |    |    |    | <u>- 0 ×</u> |
|---|------------------------|---|----|------|----|----|----|--------------|
|   | Edit Settings Add Help | × 📑 😓 🚍 🛧                                       |    |      |    |    |    |              |
|   | lition Table           |   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
|   | Description            | Condition                                       | D1 | D2   | D3 | D4 | D5 |              |
| 1 |                        | U <= 10   | т  | -    | -  | -  | -  | <u> </u>     |
| 2 |                        | U <= 17   | -  | т    | -  | -  | -  |              |
| 3 |                        | U <= 45   | -  | -    | т  | -  | -  |              |
| 4 |                        | U <= 52   | -  | -    | -  | т  | -  |              |
|   |                        | Actions: Specify a row<br>from the Action Table | 1  | 2    | 3  | 4  | 5  | •            |
|   | n Table                |   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
| # | Description            | Y = 1   | A  | tion |    |    |    |              |
| 1 |                        |   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
| 2 |                        | Y = 2   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
| 3 |                        | Y = 3   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
| 4 |                        | Y = 4   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
| 5 |                        | Y = 5   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
|   |                        |   |    |      |    |    |    |              |
|   | 4                      |   |    |      |    |    |    | Þ            |

The following code excerpt shows VHDL code generated for the quantizer chart.

```
quantizer : PROCESS (Y_reg, U)
    -- local variables
    VARIABLE aVarTruthTableCondition_1 : std_logic;
    VARIABLE aVarTruthTableCondition_2 : std_logic;
    VARIABLE aVarTruthTableCondition_3 : std_logic;
    VARIABLE aVarTruthTableCondition_4 : std_logic;
BEGIN
    Y_reg_next <= Y_reg;
    -- Condition #1
    aVarTruthTableCondition_1 := tmw_to_stdlogic(unsigned(U) <= to_unsigned(10, 8));
    -- Condition #2
    aVarTruthTableCondition_2 := tmw_to_stdlogic(unsigned(U) <= to_unsigned(17, 8));</pre>
    -- Condition #3
    aVarTruthTableCondition_3 := tmw_to_stdlogic(unsigned(U) <= to_unsigned(45, 8));</pre>
    -- Condition #4
    aVarTruthTableCondition_4 := tmw_to_stdlogic(unsigned(U) <= to_unsigned(52, 8));</pre>
    IF tmw_to_boolean(aVarTruthTableCondition_1) THEN
        -- D1
        -- Action 1
        Y_reg_next <= to_unsigned(1, 8);</pre>
    ELSIF tmw_to_boolean(aVarTruthTableCondition_2) THEN
        -- D2
        -- Action 2
        Y_reg_next <= to_unsigned(2, 8);</pre>
    ELSIF tmw_to_boolean(aVarTruthTableCondition_3) THEN
        -- D3
        -- Action 3
        Y_reg_next <= to_unsigned(3, 8);</pre>
    ELSIF tmw_to_boolean(aVarTruthTableCondition_4) THEN
        -- D4
        -- Action 4
        Y_reg_next <= to_unsigned(4, 8);</pre>
    ELSE
        -- Default
        -- Action 5
        Y_reg_next <= to_unsigned(5, 8);</pre>
```

END IF;

END PROCESS quantizer;

# Generating HDL Code with the Embedded MATLAB **Function Block**

| Introduction | (p. | 9-3) |
|--------------|-----|------|
|--------------|-----|------|

|  | in HDL code generation; pointers to related documentation and demos   |
|--|---|
| Tutorial Example: Incrementer<br>(p. 9-5)                | Step-by-step tutorial shows how to<br>incorporate an Embedded MATLAB<br>Function block into your model for<br>code generation |
| Useful Embedded MATLAB Dea<br>Patterns for HDL (p. 9-27) | sign Design patterns that will help you to<br>use advanced Embedded MATLAB<br>features  |
| Recommended Practices (p. 9-43                           | 3) Recommended option settings and procedures for optimal Embedded  |

Overview of the Embedded MATLAB Function block and its application

MATLAB Function block for HDL

code generation

| Language Support (p. 9-45)  | Describes Embedded MATLAB<br>language features supported,<br>and restrictions that apply, when<br>generating HDL code |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Other Limitations (p. 9-53) | Describes other limitations that<br>apply when generating HDL code<br>with the Embedded MATLAB<br>Function block      |

## Introduction

The Embedded MATLAB Function block contains a MATLAB function in a Simulink model. The function's inputs and outputs are represented by ports on the block, which allow you to interface your Simulink model to the function code. When you generate HDL code for an Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder generates two main HDL code files:

- A file containing entity and architecture code that implement the actual algorithm or computations generated for the Embedded MATLAB Function block.
- A file containing an entity definition and RTL architecture that provide a black box interface to the algorithmic code generated for the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

The structure of these code files is analogous to the structure of the model, in which a subsystem provides an interface between the root model and the function in the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

The Embedded MATLAB Function block supports a powerful subset of the MATLAB language that is well-suited to HDL implementation of various DSP and telecommunications algorithms, such as:

- Sequence and pattern generators
- Encoders and decoders
- Interleavers and deinterleaver
- Modulators and demodulators
- Multipath channel models; impairment models
- Timing recovery algorithms
- Viterbi algorithm; Maximum Likelihood Sequence Estimation (MLSE)
- Adaptive equalizer algorithms

### **Related Documentation and Demos**

The following documentation and demos provide further information on the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

### **Related Documentation**

For general documentation on the Embedded MATLAB Function block, see:

- "Using the Embedded MATLAB Function Block" in the Simulink documentation
- Embedded MATLAB Function block reference in the Simulink documentation

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports most of the fixed-point runtime library functions supported by Embedded MATLAB. See "Working with the Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB Subset" in the Fixed Point Toolbox documentation for a complete list of these functions, and general information on limitations that apply to the use of Fixed-Point Toolbox with Embedded MATLAB.

#### Demos

The hdlcoderviterbi2.mdl demo models a Viterbi decoder, incorporating an Embedded MATLAB Function block for use in simulation and HDL code generation. To open the model, type the following command at the MATLAB command line:

hdlcoderviterbi2

After the model opens, follow the instructions in the demo window.

9

# **Tutorial Example: Incrementer**

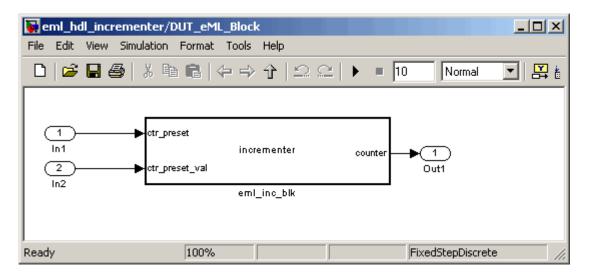
This tutorial contains the following topics:

- "Example Model Overview" on page 9-5
- "Setting Up" on page 9-8
- "Creating the Model and Configuring General Model Settings" on page 9-9
- "Adding an Embedded MATLAB Function Block to the Model" on page 9-10
- "Setting Optimal Fixed Point Options for the Embedded MATLAB Function Block" on page 9-11
- "Programming the Embedded MATLAB Function" on page 9-13
- "Constructing and Connecting the DUT\_eML\_Block Subsystem" on page 9-16
- "Compiling the Model and Displaying Port Data Types" on page 9-22
- "Simulating the eml\_hdl\_incrementer Model" on page 9-22
- "Generating HDL Code" on page 9-23

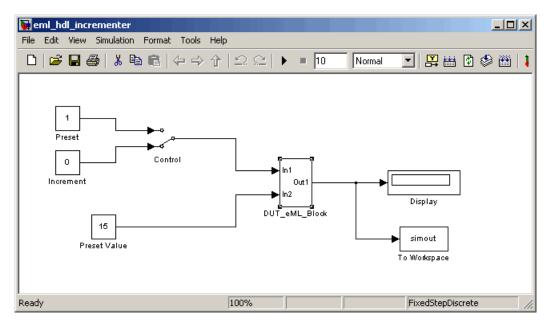
### **Example Model Overview**

In this tutorial, you construct and configure a simple model, eml\_hdl\_incrementer, and then generate VHDL code from the model. eml\_hdl\_incrementer includes an Embedded MATLAB Function block that implements a simple fixed-point counter function, incrementer. The incrementer function is invoked once during each sample period of the model. The function maintains a persistent variable count, which is either incremented or reinitialized to a preset value (ctr\_preset\_val), depending on the value passed in to the ctr\_preset input of the Embedded MATLAB Function block . The function returns the counter value (counter) at the output of the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

The Embedded MATLAB Function block is contained in a subsystem, DUT\_eML\_Block . The subsystem functions as the device under test (DUT) from which HDL code is generated. The following figure shows the subsystem.



The root-level model drives the subsystem and includes Display and To Workspace blocks for use in simulation. (The Display and To Workspace blocks do not generate any HDL code.) The following figure shows the model.



**Tip** If you do not want to construct the model step by step, or do not have time, the example model is available in the Simulink HDL Coder demos directory as the following file:

MATLABROOT\toolbox\hdlcoder\hdlcoderdemos\eml\_hdl\_incrementer.mdl

#### **The Incrementer Function Code**

The following code listing gives the complete incrementer function definition:

```
function counter = incrementer(ctr_preset, ctr_preset_val)
% The function incrementer implements a preset counter that counts
% how many times this block is called.
%
% This example function shows how to model memory with persistent variables,
% using fimath settings suitable for HDL. It also demonstrates MATLAB
% operators and other language features that Simulink HDL Coder supports
% for code generation from Embedded MATLAB Function blocks.
%
% On the first call, the result 'counter' is initialized to zero.
% The result 'counter' saturates if called more than 2^14-1 times.
% If the input ctr preset receives a nonzero value, the counter is
% set to a preset value passed in to the ctr_preset_val input.
persistent current count;
if isempty(current count)
    % zero the counter on first call only
    current_count = uint32(0);
end
counter = getfi(current_count);
if ctr preset
    % set counter to preset value if input preset signal is nonzero
    counter = ctr_preset_val;
else
```

```
% otherwise count up
inc = counter + getfi(1);
counter = getfi(inc);
end
% store counter value for next iteration
current_count = uint32(counter);
function hdl_fi = getfi(val)
nt = numerictype(0,14,0);
fm = fimath('OverflowMode', 'saturate', ...
'RoundMode', 'floor', ...
'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', ...
'ProductWordLength', 32,...
'SumWordLength', 32);
```

hdl\_fi = fi(val, nt, fm);

### **Setting Up**

Before you begin building the example model, set up a working directory and (if necessary), build an HDL supported blocks library, as described in the following sections.

#### **Setting Up a Directory**

- 1 Start MATLAB.
- **2** Create a directory named eml\_tut, for example:

```
mkdir D:\work\eml_tut
```

The eml\_tut directory stores the model you create, and also contains directories and code generated by Embedded MATLAB and Simulink HDL Coder. The location of the directory does not matter, except that it should not be within the MATLAB directory tree.

**3** Make the eml\_tut directory your working directory, for example:

9

cd D:\work\eml\_tut

# Creating the Model and Configuring General Model Settings

In this section, you create a model and set some parameters to values recommended for HDL code generation, using the Simulink HDL Coder M-file utility, hdlsetup.m. The hdlsetup command uses the Simulink set\_param function to set up models for HDL code generation quickly and consistently. See "Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup" on page 2-7 for further information about hdlsetup.

To set the model parameters:

- 1 Create a new Simulink model.
- **2** Save the model as eml\_hdl\_incrementer.mdl.
- **3** At the MATLAB command prompt, type:

hdlsetup('eml\_hdl\_incrementer')

4 Select Configuration Parameters from the Simulation menu in the eml\_hdl\_incrementer model window.

The Configuration Parameters dialog box opens with the **Solver** options pane displayed.

**5** Set the following **Solver** options, which are useful in simulating this model:

Fixed step size : 1.

Stop time : 5.

- 6 Click Apply. Then close the Configuration Parameters dialog box.1.
- **7** Select **Save** from the Simulink **File** menu, to save the model with its new settings.

# Adding an Embedded MATLAB Function Block to the Model

- **1** Open the Simulink Library Browser. Then, select the Simulink/User-Defined Functions sublibrary.
- **2** Select the Embedded MATLAB Function block from the library window and add it to the Simulink model.

The model should now appear as shown on the following figure:

| 員 e  | ml_hd | ll_incr    | ementer    |         |                               |      |         |       |       |        |        |
|------|-------|------------|------------|---------|-------------------------------|------|---------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| File | Edit  | View       | Simulation | n Forma | t Tools                       | Help |         |       |       |        |        |
| D    | 🖻     | <b>R</b> é | ∰   % I    | à C     | <₽ ⇒                          | 全日   | $\cong$ | •     | •     | 5      | Normal |
|      |       |            |            | MA      | ı fon<br>Embedde<br>.TLAB Fur |      |         |       |       |        |        |
| Read | Y     | :          | 100%       |         |                               |      | Fi>     | (edSt | epDis | screte | 11.    |

**3** Change the block label from Embedded MATLAB Function to eml\_inc\_block.

The model should now appear as shown on the following figure:

9

| 👿 eml_h   | ll_incrementer     |                      |            |         |        |        |
|-----------|--------------------|----------------------|------------|---------|--------|--------|
| File Edit | View Simulation Fo | rmat Tools           | Help       |         |        |        |
| 🗅   🖻     | 🛛 🕹   X 🖻 🕯        | 3  (⇔ ⇒)             | ĵ Ω        | $\cong$ | ■ 10.0 | Normal |
|           |                    | >u fon<br>eml_ino_bl | y ><br>ock |         |        |        |
| Ready     | 100%               |                      |            | od      | le45   | ///    |

- **4** Save the model.
- 5 Close the hdlsupported library window.

# Setting Optimal Fixed Point Options for the Embedded MATLAB Function Block

This section describes how to set up the FIMATH specification and other fixed point options that are recommended for efficient HDL code generation from the Embedded MATLAB Function block. The recommended settings are

- ProductMode property of the FIMATH specification: 'FullPrecision'
- SumMode property of the FIMATH specification: 'FullPrecision'
- Treat inherited integer signals as option: Fixed-point

Configure the options as follows:

- 1 If it is not already open, open the eml\_hdl\_incrementer model that you created in "Adding an Embedded MATLAB Function Block to the Model" on page 9-10.
- **2** Double-click the Embedded MATLAB Function block to open it for editing. The Embedded MATLAB Editor appears.

**3** Select **Edit Data/Ports** from the Tools menu. The Ports and Data Manager dialog box opens, displaying the default FIMATH specification and other properties for the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

| 🔯 Ports and Data Manager (eml_hd | _incrementer/eml_inc_block)   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 수 🕅 🗙 🛲 🐇 🔯 🗄 📖                  | Embedded MATLAB Function: eml_inc_block Name: eml_inc_block Update method: Inherited  Sample Time: Lock Editor  |
|                                  | <ul> <li>✓ Saturate on integer overflow.</li> <li>Simulink input signal properties</li> <li>FIMATH for fixed-point input signals:</li> <li>fimath(</li> <li>'BoundMode', 'floor',</li> <li>'OverflowMode', 'Wrap',</li> <li>'ProductMode', 'KeepLSB', 'ProductWordLength', 32,</li> <li>'SumMode', 'KeepLSB', 'SumWordLength', 32,</li> <li>'CastBeforeSum', true)</li> </ul> |
| <b>I</b>                         | Treat inherited integer signals as: Integer   |

**4** Replace the default **FIMATH for fixed-point signals** specification with the following:

| <pre>fimath(</pre>                                       |
|--|
| 'RoundMode', 'floor',                                    |
| 'OverflowMode', 'wrap',                                  |
| 'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32, |
| 'SumMode', 'FullPrecision', 'SumWordLength', 32,         |
| 'CastBeforeSum', true)                                   |

5 Set the Treat inherited integer signals as option to Fixed-point.

9

| 🍄 Ports and Data Manager (eml_h   | dl_incrementer/eml_inc_block)  | ×   |
|---|--|-----|
| Ports and Data Manager (eml_ht Image: Im | Embedded MATLAB Function: eml_inc_block Name: eml_inc_block Update method: Inherited v Sample Time: Lock Editor Saturate on integer overflow. Simulink input signal properties FIMATH for fixed-point input signals:   | ×   |
|   | fimath(         'RoundMode', 'loor',         'DverflowMode', 'wrap',         'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32,         'SumMode', 'FullPrecision', 'SumWordLength', 32,         'CastBeforeSum', true)         Treat inherited integer signals as:         Fixed-point         Description:         Revert       Help |     |
|   |  | 111 |

**6** Click **Apply**. The Embedded MATLAB Function block properties should now appear as shown in the following figure.

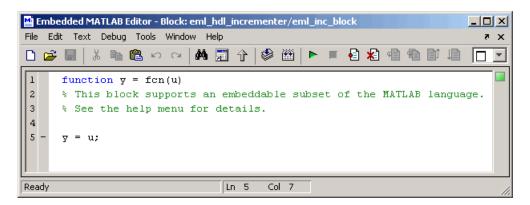
- **7** Close the Ports and Data Manager dialog box.
- **8** Save the model.

### **Programming the Embedded MATLAB Function**

The next step is add code to the Embedded MATLAB Function block to define the incrementer function, and then use MATLAB diagnostics to check for errors.

Use the following steps to program the function:

- 1 If not already open, open the eml\_hdl\_incrementer model that you created in "Adding an Embedded MATLAB Function Block to the Model" on page 9-10.
- **2** Double-click the Embedded MATLAB Function block to open it for editing. The Embedded MATLAB Editor appears. The editor displays a default function definition, as shown in the following figure.



The next step is to replace the replace the default function with the incrementer function.

- **3** Click **Select All** in the **Edit** menu of the Embedded MATLAB Editor window. Then, delete all the default code.
- **4** Copy the complete incrementer function definition from the listing given in "The Incrementer Function Code" on page 9-7, and paste it into the Embedded MATLAB Editor.

The Embedded MATLAB Editor should appear as shown in the following figure:

| 💾 Embe   | edded MATLAB Editor - Block: eml_hdl_incrementer/eml_inc_block               |
|----------|--|
| File Edi | it Text Debug Tools Window Help 🛛 🛪 🗙  |
| 🗅 😅      |  |
| 1        | function counter = incrementer(ctr preset, ctr preset val)                   |
| 2        | % The function incrementer implements a preset counter that counts           |
| 3        | % how many times this block is called.                                       |
| 4        | *  |
| 5        | % This example function shows how to model memory with persistent variables, |
| 6        | % using fimath settings suitable for HDL. It also demonstrates MATLAB        |
| 7        | % operators and other language features that Simulink HDL Coder supports     |
| 8        | % for code generation from Embedded MATLAB Function blocks.                  |
| 9        | *  |
| 10       | % On the first call, the result 'counter' is initialized to zero.            |
| 11       | % The result 'counter' saturates if called more than 2^14-1 times.           |
| 12       | % If the input ctr_preset receives a nonzero value, the counter is           |
| 13       | % set to a preset value passed in to the ctr_preset_val input.               |
| 14       | versistent surrent sount.  |
| 16 -     | persistent current_count;  |
| 17       | if isempty(current_count)<br>% zero the counter on first call only           |
| 18 -     | current count = uint32(0);   |
| 19       | end  |
| 20       |  |
| 21 -     | counter = getfi(current count);  |
| 22       |  |
| 23 -     | if ctr preset  |
| 24       | % set counter to preset value if input preset signal is nonzero              |
| 25 -     | counter = ctr_preset_val;  |
| 26       | else   |
| 27       | % otherwise count up   |
| 28 -     | <pre>inc = counter + getfi(1);</pre>   |
| 29 -     | <pre>counter = getfi(inc);</pre>   |
| 30       | end  |
| 31       |  |
| 32       | <pre>% store counter value for next iteration</pre>                          |
| 33 -     | current_count = uint32(counter);   |
| 34 35 -  | function hdl fi = getfi(val)   |
| 36       | remotion har_ii = gccii(vai)   |
| 37 -     | <pre>nt = numerictype(0,14,0);</pre>   |
| 38 -     | <pre>fm = fimath('OverflowHode', 'saturate',</pre>                           |
| 39 -     | 'RoundMode', 'floor',  |
| 40 -     | 'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision',  |
| 41 -     | 'ProductWordLength', 32,   |
| 42 -     | 'SumMode', 'FullPrecision',  |
| 43 -     | 'SumWordLength', 32);  |
| 44       |  |
| 45 -     | hdl_fi = fi(val, nt, fm);  |
| Ready    | Ln 13 Col 63   |
|          |  |

**5** Select **Save Model** from the **File** menu in the Embedded MATLAB Editor.

Saving the model updates the Simulink window, redrawing the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

Changing the function header of the Embedded MATLAB Function block makes the following changes to the Embedded MATLAB Function block in the Simulink model:

- The function name in the middle of the block changes to incrementer
- The arguments ctr\_preset and ctr\_preset\_val appear as input ports to the block.
- The return value counter appears as an output port from the block.
- **6** Resize the block to make the port labels more legible. The model should now resemble the following figure.

| 🙀 eml_hdl_incrementer                                   | <u>_   ×</u> |
|---|--------------|
| File Edit View Simulation Format Tools Help             |              |
| D 🐸 🖬 🚳 X 🖻 💼 (수 → 수   으 으 ) ▶ ■ 10.0 Norm              | ial 💌        |
| >ctr_preset<br>incrementer counter ><br>>ctr_preset_val |              |
| eml_inc_block Ready 100% ode45                          |              |

7 Save the model again.

# Constructing and Connecting the DUT\_eML\_Block Subsystem

This section assumes that you have completed "Programming the Embedded MATLAB Function" on page 9-13 with a successful build. In this section, you construct a subsystem containing the incrementer function block, to be used as the device under test (DUT) from which HDL code is generated. You then set the port data types and connect the subsystem ports to the model.

### Constructing the DUT\_eML\_Block Subsystem

Construct a subsystem containing the incrementer function block as follows:

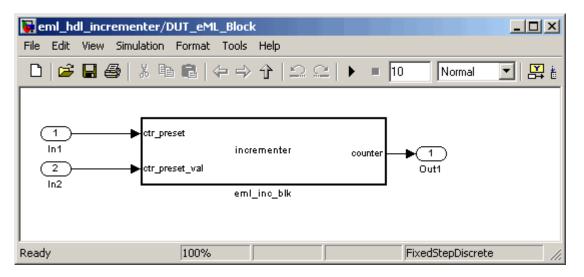
- 1 Click on the incrementer function block.
- 2 From the Simulink Edit menu, select Create Subsystem.

A subsystem, labeled Subsystem, is created in the model window.

**3** Change the Subsystem label to DUT\_eML\_Block.

# Setting Port Data Types for the Embedded MATLAB Function block

1 Double-click the subsystem to view its interior. As shown in the following figure, the subsystem contains the incrementer function block, with input and output ports connected.



2 Double-click the incrementer function block, to open the Embedded MATLAB Editor. In the editor window, select **Edit Data Ports** from the **Tools** menu. The Ports and Data Manager dialog box opens.

| 😰 Ports and Data Manager (eml_hdl_incrementer/DUT_eML_Block/eml_inc_blk) |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
|--|----------------|--------|------|--------------------|--|----------|
| 照 ≸ fo   浅 暄 悒 ×   介   |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
|  | Name           | Scope  | Port | Data Type Mode Dal | Embedded MATLAB Function: eml_inc_blk  |          |
|  | ctr_preset     | Input  | 1    | Inherited          | Name: eml inc blk  | <b>_</b> |
| $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$      | counter        | Output | 1    | Inherited          | Update method: Inherited 💌 Sample Time:  | _        |
|  | ctr_preset_val | Input  | 2    | Inherited          | Lock Editor  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | Saturate on integer overflow.  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | Simulink input signal properties   | II       |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | FIMATH for fixed-point input signals:  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | fimath(  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | 'RoundMode', 'floor',  |          |
|  |                |        |      |                    | OverflowMode', 'saturate',<br>'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32, | •        |
|  |                |        |      |                    | Treat inherited integer signals as: Fixed-point 💌                                      |          |
|  |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    | Description:   |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
| L .  |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
|  |                |        |      |                    |  |          |
|  |                |        |      | •                  | Revert Help  | Apply    |
|  |                |        |      |                    |  | 11       |

- 3 Select the ctr\_preset entry in the port list on the left. Set the **Data type** mode property for this port to Built-in. Set the **Data type** property to boolean. Click **Apply**.
- 4 Select the ctr\_preset\_val entry in the port list on the left. Set the **Data type mode** property for this port to Fixed point. Set the **Word length** property to 14. Click **Apply**.
- 5 Select the counter entry in the port list on the left. Verify that the Data type mode property for this port is set to Inherited. Click Apply.

The Ports and Data Manager dialog box should now appear as shown in the following figure.

| 6   | 🔯 Ports and Data Manager (eml_hdl_incrementer/DUT_eML_Block/eml_inc_blk) |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
|-----|--|--------|------|----------------|-----------|---|----------|--|--|
|     |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
|     | Name   | Scope  | Port | Data Type Mode | Data Type | Data ctr_preset_val   |          |  |  |
|     | ctr_preset   | Input  | 1    | Built-in       | boolean   | General Value Attributes Description                        |          |  |  |
|     | counter  | Output |      | Inherited      |           | Name: ctr_preset_val  |          |  |  |
|     | ctr_preset_val   | Input  | 2    | Fixed point    |           | Scope: Input Port 2   | <b>_</b> |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Size: -1  |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Туре  |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Data type mode: Fixed point 🔄 🗖 Signed Word length: 14      | -        |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Scaling mode: None  |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Lock output scaling against changes by the autoscaling tool |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           | Cock bulput scaling against changes by the autoscaling tool |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
| L . |  |        |      |                |           |   |          |  |  |
|     |  |        |      |                | )         | Revert Help A   | Apply    |  |  |
|     |  |        |      |                | للغر      |   |          |  |  |

- **6** Close the Ports and Data Manager dialog box and the Embedded MATLAB Editor.
- 7 Save the model and close the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem.

#### **Connecting Subsystem Ports to the Model**

Next, connect the ports of the  ${\tt DUT\_eML\_Block}$  subsystem to the model as follows:

- 1 From the Simulink Sources library, add a Constant block to the model. Set the value of the Constant to 1, and the **Output data type mode** to boolean. Change the block label to Preset.
- **2** Make a copy of the Preset Constant block. Set its value to 0, and change its block label to Increment.

- **3** Add a Switch block to the model. Change its label to Control. Connect its output to the In1 port of the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem.
- **4** From the Simulink Signal Routing library, add a Manual Switch block to the model. Change its label to Control. Connect its output to the In1 port of the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem.
- **5** Connect the Preset Constant block to the upper input of the Control switch block. Connect the Increment Constant block to the lower input of the Control switch block.
- **6** Add a third Constant block to the model. Set the value of the Constant to 15, and the **Output data type mode** to Inherit via back propagation. Change the block label to Preset Value.

Connect the Preset Value constant block to the In2 port of the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem.

- 7 From the Simulink Sinks library, add a Display block to the model. Connect it to the Out1 port of the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem.
- 8 From the Simulink Sinks library, add a To Workspace block to the model. Route the output signal from the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem to the To Workspace block.
- 9 Save the model.

#### **Checking the Embedded MATLAB Function for Errors**

Use the built-in diagnostics of Embedded MATLAB Function blocks to test for syntax errors with the following procedure:

- 1 If it is not already open, open the eml\_hdl\_incrementer model.
- **2** Double-click the Embedded MATLAB Function block incrementer to open it for editing.
- **3** In the Embedded MATLAB Editor, select **Build** from the **Tools** menu (or press **CTRL+B**) to compile and build the Embedded MATLAB code.

The build process displays some progress messages. These messages will include some warnings, because the ports of the Embedded MATLAB Function block are not yet connected to any signals. You can ignore these warnings.

The build process builds a C-MEX S-function for use in simulation. The build process includes generation of C code for the S-function. The code generation messages you see during the build process refer to generation of C code, not to HDL code generation.

When the build concludes successfully, a message window is displayed.

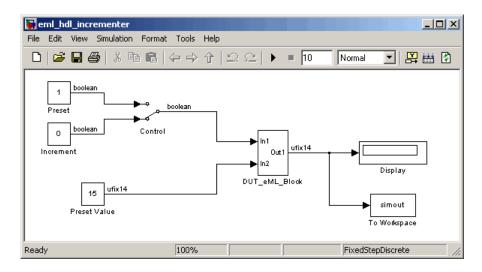
| <mark>(1</mark> ) | Stateflow Buil | der: eml_hdl_ | incrementer |                                  |         |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|----------------------------------|---------|
| Viev              | v Font Size    |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   | Message        | Source        | Reported by | Summary                          |         |
| 0                 | Parse Log      | eml_hdl_in    | Parse       |                                  |         |
| 2                 | Coder Log      | eml_hdl_in    |             |                                  |         |
|                   | Make Log       | eml_hdl_in    |             |                                  |         |
| •                 | Build Log      | Unknown       | Stateflow   | build log                        |         |
| L                 |                |               |             |                                  |         |
| L                 |                |               |             |                                  |         |
| L                 |                |               |             |                                  |         |
| -                 |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   | eml_hdl_incre  |               |             |                                  |         |
| Par:              | sing succes    | sful for ma   | achine: "em | l_hdl_incrementer"( <u>#58</u> ) |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |
|                   |                |               |             | Open He                          | p Close |
|                   |                |               |             |                                  |         |

If errors are found, the Diagnostics Manager window lists them. See "Using the Embedded MATLAB Function Block" in the Simulink documentation for information on debugging Embedded MATLAB Function block build errors.

## **Compiling the Model and Displaying Port Data Types**

In this section you enable the display of port data types and then compile the model. Model compilation verifies that the model structure and settings are correct, and update the model display.

- From the Simulink Format menu, selectPort/Signal Displays > Port Data Types.
- 2 From the Simulink Edit menu, select Update Diagram (or press Ctrl+D) to compile the model. This triggers a rebuild of the embedded MATLAB code. After the model compiles, the block diagram updates to show the port data types. The model should now appear as shown in the following figure.



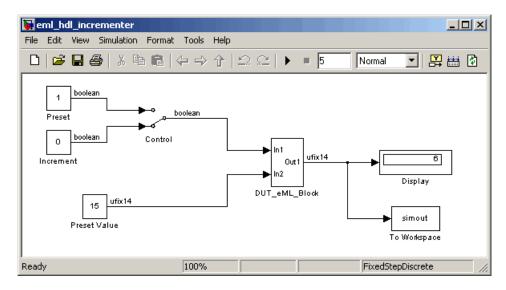
**3** Save the model.

## Simulating the eml\_hdl\_incrementer Model

Click the Start Simulation icon to run a simulation.

If necessary, Simulink rebuilds the Embedded MATLAB code before the simulation starts.

After the simulation completes, the Display block shows the final output value returned by the incrementer function block. For example, given a **Start time** 



of 0, a **Stop time** of 5, and a zero value presented at the ctr\_preset port, the simulation returns a value of 6, as shown in the following figure.

You may want to experiment with the results of toggling the Control switch, changing the Preset Value constant, and changing the total simulation time. You may also want to examine the workspace variable simout, which is bound to the To Workspace block.

## **Generating HDL Code**

In this section, you select the  $DUT\_eML\_Block$  subsystem for HDL code generation, set basic code generation options, and then generate VHDL code for the subsystem.

#### Selecting the Subsystem for Code Generation

Select the  ${\tt DUT\_eML\_Block}$  subsystem for code generation, as follows:

- **1** Open the Configuration Parameters dialog box. Click the **HDL Coder** category in the **Select** tree in the left pane of the dialog box.
- 2 Select eml\_hdl\_incrementer/DUT\_eML\_Block from the Generate HDL for menu.

**3** Click **Apply**. The dialog box should now appear as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Paramete  | rs: eml_hdl_incrementer/Configuration (Active)  |
|---|---|
| Select:   | Code generation control file  |
| Solver<br>Data Import/Export<br>Optimization<br>Diagnostics   | File name: Load Save  |
| Sample Time     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Connectivity     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols | Target         Generate HDL for:       eml_hdl_incrementer/incrementer_DUT         Language:       vhdl         Directory:       hdlsrc         Browse       Browse         Code generation output           © Generate HDL code           © Display generated model only |
|   | C Generate HDL code and display generated model      Restore Factory Defaults     Generate  |
|   | OK Cancel Help Apply  |

#### **Generating VHDL Code**

The top-level HDL Coder options should now be set as follows:

- The **Generate HDL for** field specifies the eml\_hdl\_incrementer/DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem for code generation.
- The Language field specifies (by default) generation of VHDL code.
- The **Directory** field specifies (by default) that the code generation target directory is a subdirectory of your working directory, named hdlsrc.

Before generating code, select **Current Directory** from the **Desktop** menu in the MATLAB window. This displays the MATLAB Current Directory browser, which lets you easily access your working directory and the files that are generated within it.

To generate code:

1 Click the **Generate** button.

Simulink HDL Coder compiles the model before generating code. Depending on model display options (for example, sample time colors, port data types, etc.), the appearance of the model may change after code generation.

**2** Simulink HDL Coder generates code and displays progress messages. The process should complete successfully with the message

### Applying HDL Code Generation Control Statements

```
### Begin VHDL Code Generation
### Working on eml_hdl_incrementer/DUT_eML_Block as hdlsrc\DUT_eML_Block.vhd
### Working on eml_hdl_incrementer/DUT_eML_Block/eml_inc_blk as hdlsrc\eml_inc_blk.vhd
Embedded MATLAB parsing for model "eml_hdl_incrementer"...Done
Embedded MATLAB code generation for model "eml_hdl_incrementer"...Done
### HDL Code Generation Complete.
```

Observe that the names of generated VHDL files in the progress messages are hyperlinked. After code generation completes, you can click these hyperlinks to view the files in the MATLAB editor.

- **3** A folder icon for the hdlsrc directory is now visible in the Current Directory browser. To view generated code and script files, double-click the hdlsrc folder icon.
- **4** Observe that two VHDL files were generated. The structure of HDL code generated for Embedded MATLAB Function blocks is similar to the structure of code generated for Stateflow charts and Digital Filter blocks. The VHDL files that were generated in the hdlsrc directory are
  - eml\_inc\_blk.vhd: VHDL code. This file contains entity and architecture code implementing the actual computations generated for the Embedded MATLAB Function block.
  - DUT\_eML\_Block.vhd: VHDL code. This file contains an entity definition and RTL architecture that provide a black box interface to the code generated in Embedded\_MATLAB\_Function.vhd.

The structure of these code files is analogous to the structure of the model, in which the DUT\_eML\_Block subsystem provides an interface between the root model and the incrementer function in the Embedded MATLAB Function block.

The other files that were generated in the hdlsrc directory are

- DUT\_eML\_Block\_compile.do: ModelSim compilation script (vcom command) to compile the VHDL code in the two .vhd files.
- DUT\_eML\_Block\_synplify.tcl: Synplify synthesis script.
- DUT\_eML\_Block\_map.txt: Mapping file. This report file maps generated entities (or modules) to the Simulink subsystems that generated them (see "Code Tracing Using the Mapping File" on page 6-5).
- **5** To view the generated VHDL code in the MATLAB editor, double-click the DUT\_eML\_Block.vhd or eml\_inc\_blk.vhd file icons in the Current Directory browser.

At this point you should study the ENTITY and ARCHITECTURE definitions while referring to "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13 in the makehdl reference documentation. The reference documentation describes the default naming conventions and correspondences between the elements of a Simulink model (subsystems, ports, signals, etc.) and elements of generated HDL code.

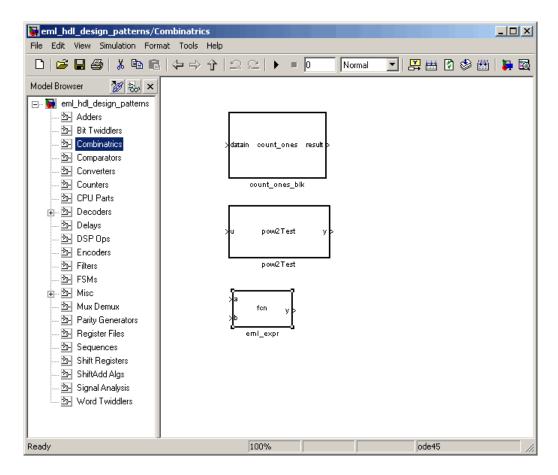
# **Useful Embedded MATLAB Design Patterns for HDL**

The following sections describe several design patterns that help you use advanced Embedded MATLAB features:

- "The eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns Library" on page 9-27
- "Efficient Fixed-Point Algorithms" on page 9-29
- "Fixed Point Bitwise Operators" on page 9-33
- "Using Persistent Variables to Model State" on page 9-35
- "Creating Intellectual Property with the Embedded MATLAB Function Block" on page 9-37
- "Modeling Control Logic and Simple Finite State Machines" on page 9-38
- "Modeling Counters" on page 9-40
- "Modeling Hardware Elements" on page 9-41

# The eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns Library

The eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library is an extensive collection of examples demonstrating useful applications of the Embedded MATLAB Function block in HDL code generation. The following figure shows the library.



The location of the library in the MATLAB directory structure is

MATLABROOT\toolbox\hdlcoder\hdlcoderdemos\eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns.mdl

Refer to example models in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library while reading the following sections. To open the library, type the following command at the MATLAB command prompt:

eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns

You can use many blocks in the library as cookbook examples of various hardware elements, as follows:

- Copy a block from the library to your model and use it as a computational unit, (generating code in a separate HDL file).
- Copy the code from the block and use it as a subfunction in an existing Embedded MATLAB Function block (generating inline HDL code).

# **Efficient Fixed-Point Algorithms**

The Embedded MATLAB Function block supports fixed point arithmetic using the Fixed Point Toolbox fi function. This function supports several rounding and saturation modes that are useful for coding algorithms that manipulate arbitrary word and fraction lengths in Embedded MATLAB. Supported rounding modes are ceil, fix, floor, and nearest. Supported overflow modes are saturate and wrap.

HDL code generated from the Embedded MATLAB Function block is bit-true to MATLAB semantics. Generated code uses bit manipulation and bit access operators (e.g., Slice, Extend, Reduce, Concat, etc.) that are native to VHDL and Verilog.

The following discussion shows how HDL code generated from the Embedded MATLAB Function block follows cast-before-sum semantics, in which addition and subtraction operands are cast to the result type before the addition or subtraction is performed.

Open the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library and select the Combinatrics/eml\_expr block. eml\_expr implements a simple expression containing addition, subtraction, and multiplication operators with differing fixed point data types. The generated HDL code shows the conversion of this expression with fixed point operands. The following listing shows the MATLAB code embedded in the block.

```
% fixpt arithmetic expression
expr = (a*b) - (a+b);
% cast the result to (sfix7_En4) output type
y = fi(expr, 1, 7, 4);
```

The default fimath specification for the block determines the behavior of arithmetic expressions using fixed point operands inside the Embedded MATLAB Function block:

```
fimath(...
    'RoundMode', 'ceil',...
    'OverflowMode', 'saturate',...
    'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32,...
    'SumMode', 'FullPrecision', 'SumWordLength', 32,...
    'CastBeforeSum', true)
```

The data types of operands and output are as follows:

- a: (sfix5\_En2)
- b: (sfix5\_En3)
- y: (sfix7\_En4).

Before HDL Code generation, the operation

expr = (a\*b) - (a+b);

is broken down internally into the following substeps:

```
1 tmul = a * b;
2 tadd = a + b;
3 tsub = tmul - tadd;
4 y = tsub;
```

Based on the fimath settings (see "Recommended Practices" on page 9-43 ) this expression is further broken down internally as follows:

- Based on the specified ProductMode, 'FullPrecision', the output type of tmul is computed as (sfix10\_En5).
- Since the CastBeforeSum property is set to 'true', substep 2 is broken down as follows:

```
t1 = (sfix7_En3) a;
t2 = (sfix7_En3) b;
tadd = t1 + t2;
```

sfix7\_En3 is the result sum type after aligning binary points and accounting for an extra bit to account for possible overflow.

• Based on intermediate types of tmul (sfix10\_En5) and tadd (sfix7\_En3) the result type of the subtraction in substep 3 is computed as sfix11\_En5. Accordingly, substep 3 is broken down as follows:

```
t3 = (sfix11_En5) tmul;
t4 = (sfix11_En5) tadd;
tsub = t3 - t4;
```

• Finally the result is cast to a smaller type (sfix7\_En4) leading to the following final expression statements:

```
tmul = a * b;
t1 = (sfix7_En3) a;
t2 = (sfix7_En3) b;
tadd = t1 + t2;
t3 = (sfix11_En5) tmul;
t4 = (sfix11_En5) tadd;
tsub = t3 - t4;
y = (sfix7_En4) tsub;
```

The following listings show the generated VHDL and Verilog code from the eml expr block.

**Note** Some comments have been added manually to the generated code.

VHDL code excerpt:

```
-- fixpt arithmetic expression
--CastBeforeSum using Slice and extend operators
b_ain := resize(signed(a & '0'), 7);
b_bin := resize(signed(b), 7);
b_ain_0 := b_ain + b_bin;
```

```
a_0 := signed(a) * signed(b);
```

```
ain := resize(a_0, 11);
bin := resize(signed(b_ain_0 & '0' & '0'), 11);
expr := ain - bin;
--Cast the result to the output type
IF ((expr(10) = '0') AND (expr(9 DOWNTO 7) /= "000")) OR --Saturation Condition
  ((expr(10) = '0') AND (expr(7 DOWNTO 1) = "0111111")) THEN
    y <= "0111111";
ELSIF (expr(10) = '1') AND (expr(9 DOWNTO 7) /= "111") THEN
    y <= "1000000";
ELSE
    y <= std_logic_vector(signed(expr(7 DOWNTO 1)) + ("0" & (expr(0)))); -- rounding
    END IF;
```

Verilog code excerpt:

```
// fixpt arithmetic expression
b_ain = \{a[4], \{a, 1'b0\}\};
b_bin = b;
a_0 = a * b;
ain = a_0;
b_ain_0 = b_ain + b_bin;
bin = {{2{b_ain_0[6]}}, {b_ain_0, 2'b00}};
expr = ain - bin;
// cast the result to correct output type
if ( ((expr[10] == 0) && (expr[9:7] != 0)) ||
      ((expr[10] == 0) && (expr[7:1] == 63)))
    v = 63;
else if ((expr[10] == 1) && (expr[9:7] != 7))
    y = -64;
else
    y = expr[7:1] + ({6'b0, expr[0]});
```

These code excerpts show that the generated HDL code from the Embedded MATLAB Function block represents the bit-true behavior of fixed point arithmetic expressions using high level HDL operators. The HDL code is

generated using HDL coding rules like high level bitselect and partselect replication operators and explicit sign extension and resize operators.

# **Fixed Point Bitwise Operators**

Embedded MATLAB supports many bitwise operators that operate on arbitrary length fixed point integers. These operators provide a high level of abstraction for writing HDL algorithms without losing the ability to manipulate bits.

For HDL code generation from Embedded MATLAB code, all standard fixed point bitwise operators are supported. These operators generate efficient HDL code. For example, the bitget operation generates the slice operator in HDL. You can use bitshift with a positive shift index to shift left (multiplication by 2) or a negative shift index to shift right (division by 2).

Simulink HDL Coder always performs arithmetic shift right for signed input operands.

In the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library, the Bit Twiddlers/hdl\_bit\_ops block illustrates how to use these functions for various bit manipulation operations. The following VHDL code was generated from the hdl\_bit\_ops block.

```
-- BITGET
        -- get bit at position 2 of fixed point input var 'a'
        -- (using 0-based VHDL/Verilog indexing)
        -- this uses slice operator in HDL
        bget <= std_logic_vector(tmw_to_unsigned(a(1), 8));

-- BITCLEAR
        -- clear bit at position 3 and compute new value into 't2'
        b_mask := to_unsigned(1, 31) sll 2;
        t2 := unsigned(a) AND ( NOT b_mask);

-- BITSET
        -- now set bit4 in t2
        -- you need to assign the result back to 't2'
        -- to update the variable
        mask := to unsigned(1, 31) sll 3;
</pre>
```

```
bset <= std_logic_vector(t2 OR mask);</pre>
-- BITCMP
      d_c_r := NOT unsigned(a);
      bcmp <= std_logic_vector(d_c_r);</pre>
-- BITAND
      f_c_uint := unsigned(a) AND unsigned(b);
      band <= std_logic_vector(f_c_uint);</pre>
-- BITOR
      e_c_uint := unsigned(a) OR unsigned(b);
      bor <= std_logic_vector(e_c_uint);</pre>
-- BITXOR
      d_c_uint := unsigned(a) XOR unsigned(b);
      bxor <= std_logic_vector(d_c_uint);</pre>
-- BITNAND
      c_c_uint := unsigned(a) AND unsigned(b);
      c_c_r := NOT c_c_uint;
      bnand <= std_logic_vector(c_c_r);</pre>
-- BITNOR
      b_c_uint := unsigned(a) OR unsigned(b);
      b_c_r := NOT b_c_uint;
      bnor <= std_logic_vector(b_c_r);</pre>
-- NOT BITXOR
      c_uint := unsigned(a) XOR unsigned(b);
      c_r := NOT c_uint;
      bnxor <= std_logic_vector(c_r);</pre>
-- BITSHIFT
      -- multitply by 2
      b_cr := unsigned(a) sll 1;
      blshift <= std_logic_vector(b_cr);</pre>
-- divide by 2
      cr := SHIFT_RIGHT(unsigned(a), 1);
```

```
brshift <= std_logic_vector(cr);</pre>
```

The Bit Twiddlers/signal\_distance block demonstrates another application of bitwise operators. This block computes the Hamming distance between the two fixed point input operands. The Embedded MATLAB code is shown in the following listing.

```
function y = hamming_distance(u, v)
% get all bits of u
t1 = bitget(u, 5:-1:1);
% get all bits of v in reverse order
t2 = bitget(v, 1:1:5);
% xor the bits
t3 = xor(t1, t2);
% find number of bits that are equal to 1
y = sum(t3);
```

## **Using Persistent Variables to Model State**

To model complex control logic, the ability to model registers is a basic requirement. In the Embedded MATLAB programming model, state-holding elements are represented as persistent variables. A variable that is declared persistent retains its value across function calls in software, and across sample time steps in Simulink. State holding elements in hardware also require this behavior. Similarly, state-holding elements should retain their values across clock sample times. The values of persistent variables can also be changed using global and local reset conditions.

The subsystem Delays in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library illustrates how persistent variables can be used to simulate various kinds of delay blocks in Simulink.

The eML Unit Delay block delays the input sample by one Simulink simulation time step. A persistent variable is used to hold the value, as shown in the following code listing:

```
function y = fcn(u)
persistent u_d;
if isempty(u_d)
    u_d = fi(-1, numerictype(u), fimath(u));
end
% return delayed input from last sample time hit
y = u_d;
% store the current input to be used later
u_d = u;
```

In this example, u is a fixed point operand of type sfix5. In the generated HDL code, initialization of persistent variables is moved into the master reset region in the initialization process as follows.

```
ENTITY eML_Unit_Delay IS
   PORT (
        clk : IN std logic;
        clk_enable : IN std_logic;
        reset : IN std logic;
        u : IN std_logic_vector(4 DOWNTO 0);
        y : OUT std_logic_vector(4 DOWNTO 0));
END eML Unit Delay;
ARCHITECTURE fsm_SFHDL OF eML_Unit_Delay IS
   SIGNAL u_d : signed(4 DOWNTO 0);
    SIGNAL u_d_next : signed(4 DOWNTO 0);
BEGIN
    initialize eML Unit Delay : PROCESS (reset, clk)
        -- local variables
   BEGIN
        IF reset = '1' THEN
            u d <= to signed(-1, 5);
```

ELSIF clk'EVENT AND clk= '1' THEN

```
IF clk_enable= '1' THEN
```

```
u_d <= u_d_next;
END IF;
END IF;
END PROCESS initialize_eML_Unit_Delay;
```

Refer to the Delays subsystem to see how vectors of persistent variables can be used to model Integer Delay, Tapped Delay, and Tapped Delay Vector blocks. These design patterns are useful in implementing sequential algorithms that carry state between invocations of the Embedded MATLAB block in a Simulink model.

# Creating Intellectual Property with the Embedded MATLAB Function Block

The Embedded MATLAB Function block lets you quickly author intellectual property (IP). It also lets you rapidly create alternate implementations of a part of an algorithm.

For example, the subsystem Comparators in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library includes several alternate algorithms for finding the minimum value of a vector. The Comparators/eml\_linear\_min block finds the minimum of the vector in a linear mode serially. The Comparators/eml\_tree\_min block compares the elements in a tree structure. The tree implementation can achieve a higher clock frequency by adding pipeline registers between the log2(N) stages. (See eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns/Filters for an example.)

Now consider replacing the simple comparison operation in the Comparators blocks with an arithmetic operation (e.g., addition, subtraction, or multiplication) where intermediate results must be quantized. Using fimath rounding settings, you can fine tune intermediate value computations before intermediate values feed into the next stage. This can be a powerful technique for tuning the generated hardware or customizing your algorithm.

By using Embedded MATLAB Function blocks in this way, you can guide the detailed operation of the HDL code generator even while writing high-level algorithms.

## Modeling Control Logic and Simple Finite State Machines

Embedded MATLAB control constructs such as switch/case and if-elseif-else, coupled with fixed point arithmetic operations, let you model control logic quickly.

The FSMs/mealy\_fsm\_blk andFSMs/moore\_fsm\_blk blocks in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library provide example implementations of Mealy and Moore finite state machines in Embedded MATLAB.

The following listing implements a Moore state machine.

```
function Z = moore_fsm(A)
persistent moore_state_reg;
if isempty(moore_state_reg)
    moore_state_reg = fi(0, 0, 2, 0);
end
S1 = 0;
S2 = 1;
S3 = 2;
S4 = 3;
switch uint8(moore_state_reg)
    case S1,
        Z = true;
        if (~A)
            moore_state_reg(1) = S1;
        else
            moore_state_reg(1) = S2;
        end
    case S2,
        Z = false;
        if (~A)
            moore_state_reg(1) = S1;
        else
            moore_state_reg(1) = S2;
```

```
end
    case S3,
        Z = false;
        if (~A)
            moore_state_reg(1) = S2;
        else
            moore_state_reg(1) = S3;
        end
    case S4,
        Z = true;
        if (~A)
            moore_state_reg(1) = S1;
        else
            moore_state_reg(1) = S3;
        end
    otherwise,
        Z = false;
end
```

In this example, a persistent variable (moore\_state\_reg) models state variables. The output depends only on the state variables, thus modeling a Moore machine.

The FSMs/mealy\_fsm\_blk block in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library implements a Mealy state machine. A Mealy state machine differs from a Moore state machine in that the outputs depend on inputs as well as state variables.

Simple state machines and other control-based hardware algorithms, such as pattern matchers, or synchronization-related controllers, can be quickly modeled using control statements and persistent variables in Embedded MATLAB.

For modeling more complex and hierarchical state machines with complicated temporal logic, use Stateflow to model the state machine.

## **Modeling Counters**

To implement arithmetic and control logic algorithms in Embedded MATLAB Function blocks intended for HDL code generation, there are some simple HDL related coding requirements:

- The top level Embedded MATLAB Function block must be called once per time step.
- It must be possible to fully unroll program loops.
- Persistent variables with proper reset values and update logic must be used to hold values across Simulink time steps.
- Quantized data variables must be used inside loops.

The following script shows how to model a synchronous up/down counter with preset values and control inputs. The example provides both master reset control of persistent state variables and local reset control using block inputs (e.g. presetClear). The isempty condition enters the initialization process under the control of a synchronous reset. The presetClear section is implemented in the output section in the generated HDL code.

Both the up and down case statements implementing the count loop require that the values of the counter are quantized after addition or subtraction. By default, Embedded MATLAB automatically propagates fixed-point settings specified for the block. In this script, however, fixed-point settings for intermediate quantities and constants are explicitly specified.

```
function [Q, QN] = up_down_ctr(upDown, presetClear, loadData, presetData)
% up down result
% 'result' syntheses into sequential element
result_nt = numerictype(0,4,0);
result_fm = fimath('OverflowMode', 'saturate', 'RoundMode', 'floor');
initVal = fi(0, result_nt, result_fm);
persistent count;
if isempty(count)
    count = initVal;
```

```
end
if presetClear
    count = initVal;
elseif loadData
    count = presetData;
elseif upDown
    inc = count + fi(1, result_nt, result_fm);
    -- quantization of output
    count = fi(inc, result_nt, result_fm);
else
    dec = count - fi(1, result_nt, result_fm);
    -- quantization of output
    count = fi(dec, result_nt, result_fm);
end
Q = count;
QN = bitcmp(count);
```

## **Modeling Hardware Elements**

The following code example shows how to model shift registers in Embedded MATLAB by using the bitshift function. This function implements a serial input and output shifters with a 32-bit fixed-point operand input. See the Shift Registers/1by32\_shift\_reg block in the eml\_hdl\_design\_patterns library for more details.

```
function sr_out = fcn(shift, sr_in)
persistent sr;
if isempty(sr)
    sr = fi(0, 0, 32, 0);
end
if (shift)
    % sr[31:1] = sr[30:0]
    sr = bitshift(sr, 1);
    % sr[0] = sr_in
    sr = bitset(sr, 1, int8(sr_in));
end
```

% return sr[31] sr\_out = fi(bitget(sr, 32), 0, 1, 0);

The Shift Registers/1by64\_shift\_reg block shows a 64 bit shifter. In this case, the shifter uses two fixed point words, to represent the operand, overcoming the 32-bit word length limitation for fixed-point integers.

Browse the eml\_hdl\_incrementer model for other useful hardware elements that can be easily implemented using Embedded MATLAB.

# **Recommended Practices**

This section describes recommended practices when using the Embedded MATLAB Function block for HDL code generation.

- "Build the Embedded MATLAB Code First" on page 9-43
- "Use Optimal FIMATH Settings" on page 9-43
- "Use Optimal Fixed Point Option Settings" on page 9-44

**Note** The MathWorks strongly recommends that you set Embedded MATLAB Function block options as described in this section. By using these settings, you can significantly increase the efficiency of generated HDL code. See "Setting Optimal Fixed Point Options for the Embedded MATLAB Function Block" on page 9-11 for an example.

### **Build the Embedded MATLAB Code First**

Before generating HDL code for a subsystem containing an Embedded MATLAB Function block, it is strongly recommended that you build the Embedded MATLAB code to check for errors. To build the code, select **Build** from the **Tools** menu in the Embedded MATLAB editor (or press **CTRL+B**).

## **Use Optimal FIMATH Settings**

Use the default FIMATH specification, but change the following properties:

- ProductMode property of the FIMATH specification: set to 'FullPrecision'
- SumMode property of the FIMATH specification: set to 'FullPrecision'

The following listing shows the resultant FIMATH setting.

```
fimath(...
'RoundMode', 'floor',...
'OverflowMode', 'wrap',...
'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32,...
'SumMode', 'FullPrecision', 'SumWordLength', 32,...
'CastBeforeSum', true)
```

**Note** When the FIMATH OverflowMode property of the FIMATH specification is set to 'Saturate', HDL code generation is disallowed for the following cases:

- SumMode is set to 'SpecifyPrecision'
- ProductMode is set to 'SpecifyPrecision'

## **Use Optimal Fixed Point Option Settings**

Set the **Treat inherited integer signals as** option to Fixed-point, as shown in the following figure.

| 8     | Ports and Data Manager (eml_hdl_incrementer/eml_inc_block) |        |      |             |  |     |  |  |  |
|-------|--|--------|------|-------------|--|-----|--|--|--|
|       | i] 🖌   | fO 🛛   |      | ■× [ ☆      |  |     |  |  |  |
| Ē     | Name   | Scope  | Port | Data Type M | Embedded MATLAB Function: eml_inc_block  |     |  |  |  |
| [;;;] | u  | Input  | 1    | Inherited   | Name: eml inc block  | ▲   |  |  |  |
|       | у  | Output | 1    | Inherited   | Update method: Inherited 💽 Sample Time:  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | 🗖 Lock Editor  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | Saturate on integer overflow.  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | Simulink input signal properties   |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | FIMATH for fixed-point input signals:  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | fimath(<br>'RoundMode', 'floor',<br>'D'verflowMode', 'wrap',<br>'ProductMode', 'FullPrecision', 'ProductWordLength', 32,<br>'SumMode', 'FullPrecision', 'SumWordLength', 32,<br>'CastBeforeSum', true) |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | Treat inherited integer signals as: Fixed-point 💌  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | Description:   |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             | 1 1  | -   |  |  |  |
| •     |  |        |      | F           | Revert Help Apply  |     |  |  |  |
|       |  |        |      |             |  | /// |  |  |  |

# Language Support

This section discusses the following topics:

- "Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB Runtime Library Support" on page 9-45
- "Variables and Constants" on page 9-46
- "Arithmetic Operators" on page 9-49
- "Relational Operators" on page 9-50
- "Logical Operators" on page 9-51
- "Control Flow Statements" on page 9-51

# Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB Runtime Library Support

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports most of the fixed-point runtime library functions supported by Embedded MATLAB. For a complete list of these functions, see "Supported Functions and Limitations of Fixed-Point Embedded MATLAB" in the Fixed Point Toolbox documentation.

Some functions are not supported, or are subject to some restrictions. These functions are summarized in the following table.

| Function   | Restriction   | Notes   |
|------------|---------------|---|
| complex    | Not supported | Complex data types are<br>not supported in this<br>release. |
| conj       | Not supported | Complex data types are<br>not supported in this<br>release. |
| ctranspose | Not supported | Complex data types are<br>not supported in this<br>release. |
| disp       | Not supported |   |

| Function | Restriction                  | Notes  |
|----------|------------------------------|--|
| get      | Not supported                | This function returns a struct. Struct data types are not supported in this release. |
| imag     | Not supported                | Complex data types are<br>not supported in this<br>release.                          |
| pow2     | Not supported                |  |
| real     | Not supported                |  |
| divide   | Supported, with restrictions | The divisor must be a constant and a power of two.                                   |
| fi       | Supported, with restrictions | Only the following<br>rounding modes are<br>supported: ceil, fix,<br>floor, nearest. |
| fimath   | Supported, with restrictions | Only the following<br>rounding modes are<br>supported: ceil, fix,<br>floor, nearest. |
| subsasgn | Supported, with restrictions | Subscripted assignment<br>supported; see "Data Type<br>Usage" on page 9-47           |
| subsref  | Supported, with restrictions | Subscripted reference<br>supported; see "Data Type<br>Usage" on page 9-47            |

# **Variables and Constants**

This section summarizes supported data types and typing rules for variable and constants, and the use of persistent variables in modeling registers.

#### Data Type Usage

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports a subset of MATLAB data types. The following table summarizes supported and unsupported data types.

| Type(s)     | Support   | Notes  |  |
|-------------|---|--|--|
| Integer     | Supported:  |  |  |
|             | • uint8, uint16, uint32,  |  |  |
|             | • int8, int16, int32  |  |  |
| Real        | Supported:  | HDL code generated with double   |  |
|             | • double  | or single data types is not synthesizable.   |  |
|             | • single  |  |  |
| Character   | Supported:<br>char  |  |  |
| Logical     | Supported:  |  |  |
|             | Boolean   |  |  |
| Fixed point | <ul><li>Supported:</li><li>Scaled (binary point only) fixed</li></ul> | Fixed point numbers with slope (not equal to 1.0) and bias (not equal to 0.0) are not supported.                                       |  |
|             | <ul><li>point numbers</li><li>Custom integers (zero binary</li></ul>  | Maximum word size for fixed-point<br>numbers is 32 bits.   |  |
|             | point)  | The convergent and matlab rounding<br>modes are not currently supported.<br>Do not specify these modes in fimath<br>in specifications. |  |
| Vectors     | Supported:  | The maximum number of vector elements allowed is 2^32.   |  |
|             | • unordered {N}   | Embedded MATLAB requires a   |  |
|             | • row {1, N}  | variable to be fully defined before it   |  |
|             | • column {N, 1}   | is subscripted.  |  |

| Type(s)     | Support | Notes   |
|-------------|---------|---|
| Matrix      | N/A     | Matrices are not supported in the current release.              |
| Complex     | N/A     | Complex data types are not supported<br>in the current release. |
| Struct      | N/A     | Struct data types are not supported in the current release.     |
| Cell arrays | N/A     | Cell arrays are not supported in the current release.           |

#### Typing Ports, Variables and Constants

Strong typing rules are applied to Embedded MATLAB Function blocks, as follows:

- All input and output port data types must be resolved at model compilation time.
  - If the data type of an input port is unspecified when the model is compiled, the port is assigned the data type of the signal driving the port.
  - If the data type of an output port is unspecified when the model is compiled, the output port type is type is determined by the first assignment to the output variable.
- Similarly, all constant literals are strongly typed. If you do not specify the data type of a constant explicitly, its type is determined by internal rules. To specify the data type of a constant, use cast functions (e.g., uint8, uint16, etc.) or fi functions using fimath specifications.
- After you have defined a variable, do not change its data type. Variable types cannot be changed dynamically by assigning a different value as in MATLAB. Dynamic typing will lead to a compile time error.
- After you have defined a variable, do not change its size. Variables cannot be grown or resized dynamically.
- Do not use output variables to model registered output; in Embedded MATLAB, outputs are never persistent. Use persistent variables for this purpose, as described in "Persistent Variables" on page 9-49.

#### **Persistent Variables**

Persistent variables let you model registers. If you need to preserve state between invocations of an Embedded MATLAB Function block, use persistent variables.

Each persistent variable must be initialized with a statement specifying its size and type before it is referenced. The correct way to initialize a persistent variable for use in HDL code generation is to directly initialize it with a constant value, as in the following example:

```
persistent p;
if isempty(p)
        p = fi(0,0,8,0);
end
```

See also "The Incrementer Function Code" on page 9-7 for an example of the initialization and use of a persistent variable.

**Note** If persistent variables are not initialized properly, unnecessary sentinel variables can appear in the generated code.

#### **Arithmetic Operators**

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports the arithmetic operators (and their M function equivalents) listed in the following table.

| Operation                | Operator Syntax | M Function Equivalent | Fixed Point<br>Support? |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Binary addition          | A+B             | plus(A,B)             | Y                       |
| Matrix Multiplication    | A*B             | mtimes(A,B)           | Y                       |
| Arraywise multiplication | A.*B            | times(A,B)            | Y                       |
| Matrix right division    | A/B             | mrdivide(A,B)         | Y                       |
| Arraywise right division | А./В            | rdivide(A,B)          | Y                       |
| Matrix left division     | A\B             | mldivide(A,B)         | Y                       |

| Operation   | Operator Syntax | M Function Equivalent | Fixed Point<br>Support? |  |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Arraywise left division   | A.\B            | ldivide(A,B)          | Y                       |  |
| Matrix power  | A^B             | mpower(A,B)           | Y                       |  |
| Arraywise power   | A.^B            | power(A,B)            | Y                       |  |
| Complex transpose   | Α'              | ctranspose(A)         | Y                       |  |
| Matrix transpose  | A.'             | transpose(A)          | Y                       |  |
| Matrix concat   | [A B]           | None                  | Y                       |  |
| Matrix index<br>Note: Embedded<br>MATLAB requires a<br>variable to be fully<br>defined before it is<br>subscripted. | A(r c)          | None                  | Υ.                      |  |

# **Relational Operators**

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports the relational operators (and their M function equivalents) listed in the following table.

| Relation                 | Operator<br>Syntax                          | M<br>Function<br>Equivalent | Fixed Point Support? |
|--------------------------|---|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| Less than                | A <b< td=""><td>lt(A,B)</td><td>Y</td></b<> | lt(A,B)                     | Y                    |
| Less than or equal to    | A<=B  | le(A,B)                     | Y                    |
| Greater than or equal to | A>=B  | ge(A,B)                     | Y                    |
| Greater than             | A>B   | gt(A,B)                     | Y                    |
| Equal                    | A==B  | eq(A,B)                     | Y                    |
| Not Equal                | A~=B  | ne(A,B)                     | Y                    |

# **Logical Operators**

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder supports the logical operators (and their M function equivalents) listed in the following table.

| Relation                             | Operator<br>Syntax | M Function<br>Equivalent | Fixed<br>Point<br>Support? | Notes   |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Logical And                          | A&B                | and(A,B)                 | Y                          |   |
| Logical Or                           | A B                | or(A,B)                  | Y                          |   |
| Logical Xor                          | A xor B            | xor(A,B)                 | Y                          |   |
| Logical<br>And (short<br>circuiting) | A&&B               | N/A                      | Y                          | Use short circuiting logical<br>operators within conditionals.<br>See also "Control Flow<br>Statements" on page 9-51. |
| Logical<br>Or (short<br>circuiting)  | А  В               | N/A                      | Y                          | Use short circuiting logical<br>operators within conditionals.<br>See also "Control Flow<br>Statements" on page 9-51. |
| Element<br>complement                | ~A                 | not(A)                   | Y                          |   |

# **Control Flow Statements**

When generating code for the Embedded MATLAB Function block, Simulink HDL Coder imposes some restrictions on the use of control flow statements and constructs. The following table summarizes supported and unsupported control flow statements.

| Control Flow<br>Statement | Notes   |
|---------------------------|---|
| break                     | Do not use these statements within loops. Use of these statements in  |
| continue                  | a loop causes Simulink HDL Coder to report the following error:   |
| return                    | Unstructured flow graph or loop containing<br>[statement type] not supported for HDL  |
| for<br>while              | while loops and for loops without static bounds are not supported.<br>Use of while and for loops without static bounds causes Simulink<br>HDL Coder to report the following error:        |
|                           | Unstructured flow graph or loop containing<br>[statement type] not supported for HDL  |
|                           | Do not use the & and   operators within conditions of a while or for statement. Instead, use the && and    operators.   |
|                           | Embedded MATLAB does not support nonscalar expressions in the conditions of while and for statements. Use the all or any functions to collapse logical vectors into scalars.              |
| if                        | Do not use the & and   operators within conditions of an if statement.<br>Instead, use the && and    operators.   |
|                           | Embedded MATLAB does not support nonscalar expressions are not<br>supported in the conditions of if statements. Use the all or any<br>functions to collapse logical vectors into scalars. |
| switch                    | The HDL code matches the behavior of the MATLAB switch statement; the first matching case statement is executed.  |
|                           | Use only scalars in conditional expressions in a switch statement.  |
|                           | Use of fi variables in switch or case conditionals is not supported.<br>For HDL code generation, the usage is restricted to uint8, uint16,<br>uint32, sint8, sint16, and sint32.          |
|                           | If multiple case statements make assignments to the same variable,<br>then their numeric type and fimath specification should match that<br>variable.                                     |

# **Other Limitations**

This section lists other limitations that apply when generating HDL code with the Embedded MATLAB Function block. These limitations are:

- The HDL compatibility checker (checkhdl) performs only a basic compatibility check on the Embedded MATLAB Function block. HDL related warnings or errors may arise during code generation from an Embedded MATLAB Function block that is otherwise valid for simulation. Such errors are reported in a separate message window.
- Embedded MATLAB does not support nested functions. Subfunctions are supported, however. For an example, see "Tutorial Example: Incrementer" on page 9-5.
- Use of multiple values on the left side of an expression is not supported. For example, an error results from the following assignment statement:

[t1, t2, t3] = [1, 2, 3];



# 10

## Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools

| Overview of Script Generation for EDA Tools (p. 10-2) | Overview of generation of scripts for<br>third-party simulation and synthesis<br>tools |
|---|--|
| Defaults for Script Generation<br>(p. 10-3)           | Defaults and file naming conventions   |
| Custom Script Generation (p. 10-4)                    | Command line properties and GUI options for customizing script files                   |

### **Overview of Script Generation for EDA Tools**

Simulink HDL Coder supports generation of script files for third-party electronic design automation (EDA) tools. These scripts let you compile and simulate generated HDL code or synthesize generated HDL code.

Using the defaults, you can automatically generate scripts for the following tools:

- Mentor Graphics ModelSim SE/PE HDL simulator
- The Synplify family of synthesis tools

#### **Defaults for Script Generation**

By default, script generation takes place automatically, as part of the code and test bench generation process.

All script files are generated in the target directory.

When you generate HDL code for a model or subsystem *system*, Simulink HDL Coder writes the following script files:

- *system\_*compile.do: ModelSim compilation script. This script contains commands to compile the generated code, but not to simulate it.
- system\_synplify.tcl: Synplify synthesis script

When you generate test bench code for a model or subsystem *system*, Simulink HDL Coder writes the following script files:

- *system\_tb\_compile.do*: ModelSim compilation script. This script contains commands to compile the generated code and test bench.
- *system\_tb\_sim.do*: ModelSim simulation script. This script contains commands to run a simulation of the generated code and test bench.

### **Custom Script Generation**

- "Structure of Generated Script Files" on page 10-4
- "Properties for Controlling Script Generation" on page 10-5
- "Controlling Script Generation with the EDA Tool Scripts GUI Panel" on page 10-8

You can enable or disable script generation and customize the names and content of generated script files using either of the following methods:

- Use the makehdl or makehdltb functions, and pass in the appropriate property name/property value arguments, as described in "Properties for Controlling Script Generation" on page 10-5.
- Set script generation options in the **EDA Tool Scripts** pane of the Simulink HDL Coder GUI, as described in "Controlling Script Generation with the EDA Tool Scripts GUI Panel" on page 10-8.

#### **Structure of Generated Script Files**

A generated EDA script consists of three sections, generated and executed in the following order:

- 1 An initialization (Init) phase. The Init phase performs any required setup actions, such as creating a design library or a project file. Some arguments to the Init phase are implicit, for example, the top-level entity or module name.
- **2** A command-per-file phase (Cmd). This phase of the script is called iteratively, once per generated HDL file or once per signal. On each call, a different file or signal name is passed in.
- **3** A termination phase (Term). This is the final execution phase of the script. One application of this phase is to execute a simulation of HDL code that was compiled in the Cmd phase. The Term phase takes no arguments.

Simulink HDL Coder generates scripts by passing format strings to the MATLAB fprintf function. Using the GUI options (or makehdl and makehdltb properties) summarized in the following sections, you can pass in customized format strings to the script generator. Some of these format

strings take arguments, such as the top-level entity or module name, or the names of the VHDL or Verilog files in the design.

You can use any legal fprintf formatting characters. For example,  $\n'$  inserts a newline into the script file.

#### **Properties for Controlling Script Generation**

This section describes how to set properties in the makehdl or makehdltb functions to enable or disable script generation and customize the names and content of generated script files.

#### **Enabling and Disabling Script Generation**

The EDAScriptGeneration property controls the generation of script files. By default, EDAScriptGeneration is set 'on'. To disable script generation, set EDAScriptGeneration to 'off', as in the following example.

```
makehdl('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir,'EDAScriptGeneration','off')
```

#### **Customizing Script Names**

When you generate HDL code, script names are generated by appending a postfix string to the model or subsystem name *system*.

When you generate test bench code, script names are generated by appending a postfix string to the test bench name *testbench\_tb*.

The postfix string depends on the type of script (compilation, simulation, or synthesis) being generated. The default postfix strings are shown in the following table. For each type of script, you can define your own postfix using the associated property.

| Script Type | Property                | Default Value   |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| Compilation | 'HDLCompileFilePostfix' | '_compile.do'   |
| Simulation  | 'HDLSimFilePostfix'     | '_sim.do'       |
| Synthesis   | 'HDLSynthFilePostfix'   | '_synplify.tcl' |

The following command generates VHDL code for the subsystem system, specifying a custom postfix string for the compilation script. The name of the generated compilation script will be system\_test\_compilation.do.

```
makehdl('mymodel/system', 'HDLCompileFilePostfix', '_test_compilation.do')
```

#### **Customizing Script Code**

Using the property name/property value pairs summarized in the following table, you can pass in customized format strings to makehdl or makehdltb. The properties are named according to the following conventions:

- Properties that apply to the initialization (Init) phase are identified by the substring Init in the property name.
- Properties that apply to the command-per-file phase (Cmd) are identified by the substring Cmd in the property name.
- Properties that apply to the termination (Term) phase are identified by the substring Term in the property name.

| Property Name and Default                               | Description  |
|---|--|
| Name: 'HDLCompileInit'                                  | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Init  |
| Default:'vlib work\n'                                   | section of the compilation script.   |
| Name: 'HDLCompileVHDLCmd'<br>Default: 'vcom %s %s\n'    | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>Cmd section of the compilation script for VHDL<br>files. The two arguments are the contents of the<br>'SimulatorFlags' property and the file name of<br>the current entity or module. To omit the flags, set<br>'SimulatorFlags' to '' (the default).    |
| Name: 'HDLCompileVerilogCmd'<br>Default: 'vlog %s %s\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>Cmd section of the compilation script for Verilog<br>files. The two arguments are the contents of the<br>'SimulatorFlags' property and the file name of<br>the current entity or module. To omit the flags, set<br>'SimulatorFlags' to '' (the default). |

| Property Name and Default   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Name:'HDLCompileTerm'<br>Default:''   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the termination portion of the compilation script.   |
| Name: 'HDLSimInit'<br>Default:<br>['onbreak resume\n',<br>'onerror resume\n'] | Format string passed to fprintf to write the initialization section of the simulation script.   |
| Name: 'HDLSimCmd'<br>Default: 'vsim work.%s\n'                                | Format string passed to fprintf to write the simulation command. The implicit argument is the top-level module or entity name.  |
| Name: 'HDLSimViewWaveCmd'<br>Default: 'add wave sim:%s\n'                     | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>simulation script waveform viewing command.<br>The implicit argument is the top-level module or<br>entity name.   |
| Name: 'HDLSimTerm'<br>Default: 'run -all\n'                                   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Term<br>portion of the simulation script   |
| Name: 'HDLSynthInit'<br>Default: 'project -new %s.prj\n'                      | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Init<br>section of the synthesis script. The default string is<br>a synthesis project creation command. The implicit<br>argument is the top-level module or entity name. |

| Property Name and Default  | Description   |
|--|---|
| Name: 'HDLSynthCmd'  | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Cmd  |
| Default: 'add_file %s\n'   | section of the synthesis script. The argument is the file name of the entity or module. |
| Name: 'HDLSynthTerm'   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Term                                       |
| Default:   | section of the synthesis script.  |
| ['set_option -technology VIRTEX2\n',                                       |   |
| 'set_option -part XC2V500\n',<br>'set_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\n', |   |
| 'set_option -frequency auto\n',  |   |
| 'project -run synthesis\n']  |   |
|  |   |
|  |   |
|  |   |

#### Example

The following example specifies a ModelSim command for the Init phase of a compilation script for VHDL code generated from the subsystem system.

```
makehdl(system, 'HDLCompileInit', 'vlib mydesignlib\n')
```

The following example lists the resultant script, system\_compile.do.

```
vlib mydesignlib
vcom system.vhd
```

#### Controlling Script Generation with the EDA Tool Scripts GUI Panel

The **EDA Tool Scripts** panel of the Simulink HDL Coder GUI lets you set all options that control generation of script files. These options correspond to the properties described in "Properties for Controlling Script Generation" on page 10-5

To view and set options in the EDA Tool Scripts GUI panel:

**1** Select **Configuration Parameters** from the **Simulation** menu in the model window.

The Configuration Parameters dialog box opens with the **Solver** options pane displayed.

2 Click the **EDA Tool Scripts** entry in the **Select** tree in the left panel of the Configuration Parameters dialog box. By default, the **EDA Tool Scripts** pane is displayed, with the **Compilation script** options group selected, as shown in the following figure.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameters: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| Select:   | -EDA Tool Scripts  |   |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Oata Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug     Interface     HDL Coder     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | Generate EDA so<br>Compilation script<br>Simulation script<br>Synthesis script | cripts Compile file postfix: _compile.do Compile initialization:  Vib work\n  Compile command for VHDL:  Vcom %s %s\n  Compile command for Verilog:  Vlog %s %s\n  Compile termination: |
|   |  | OK Cancel Help Apply  |

**3** The **Generate EDA scripts** option controls the generation of script files. By default, this option is selected. If you want to disable script generation, deselect this option and click **Apply**.

- **4** The list on the left of the **EDA Tool Scripts** pane lets you select from several categories of options. Select a category and set the options as desired. The categories are
  - **Compilation script**: Options related to customizing scripts for compilation of generated VHDL or Verilog code. See "Compilation Script Options" on page 10-10 for further information.
  - **Simulation script**: Options related to customizing scripts for HDL simulators. See "Simulation Script Options" on page 10-12 for further information.
  - **Synthesis script**: Options related to customizing scripts for synthesis tools. See "Synthesis Script Options" on page 10-14 for further information.

#### **Compilation Script Options**

The following figure shows the **Compilation script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🐁 Configuration Parameters: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Select:  | EDA Tool Scripts-  |  |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Real-Time Workshop     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug     Interface     Hard Coder     Global Settings     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | ✓ Generate EDA scripts         Compilation script         Simulation script         Synthesis script         Compile initialization:         vlib work\n         Compile command for VHDL:         vcom %s %s\n         Compile command for Verilog:         vlog %s %s\n         Compile termination: |  |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply   |  |

#### The following table summarizes the **Compilation script** options.

| Option and Default           | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Compile file postfix'        | Postfix string appended to the filter name or test bench |
| '_compile.do'                | name to form the script file name.                       |
| Name: Compile initialization | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Init        |
| Default:'vlib work\n'        | section of the compilation script.                       |
|                              |  |

| Option and Default  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Name: <b>Compile command for VHDL</b><br>Default: 'vcom %s %s\n'              | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Cmd<br>section of the compilation script for VHDL files. The<br>two arguments are the contents of the <b>Simulator</b><br><b>flags</b> option and the filename of the current entity or<br>module. To omit the flags, set <b>Simulator flags</b> to ''<br>(the default).     |
| Name: <b>Compile command for</b><br><b>Verilog</b><br>Default: 'vlog %s %s\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Cmd<br>section of the compilation script for Verilog files. The<br>two arguments are the contents of the <b>Simulator</b><br><b>flags</b> option and the filename of the current entity or<br>module. To omit the flags, set <b>Simulator flags</b> to '''<br>(the default). |
| Name: <b>Compile termination</b><br>Default: ' '                              | Format string passed to fprintf to write the termination portion of the compilation script.   |

#### **Simulation Script Options**

The following figure shows the **Simulation script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameters: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Select:  | EDA Tool Scripts  |  |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Data Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug     Interface     HDL Coder     Global Settings     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | Generate EDA scripts         Compilation script       Simulation file postfix: _sim.do         Simulation script       Simulation initialization:         Onbreak resume\nonerror resume\n         Simulation command:         vsim work.%s\n         Simulation waveform viewing command:         add wave sim:%s\n         Simulation termination:         run -all\n |  |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply  |  |

#### The following table summarizes the **Simulation script** options.

| Option and Default                       | Description  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <b>Simulation file postfix</b> '_sim.do' | Postfix string appended to the filter name or test bench<br>name to form the script file name. |  |
| Simulation initialization                | Format string passed to fprintf to write the   |  |
| Default:                                 | initialization section of the simulation script.   |  |
| ['onbreak resume\nonerror resume\n']     |  |  |
| Simulation command                       | Format string passed to fprintf to write the   |  |
| Default: 'vsim work.%s\n'                | simulation command. The implicit argument is the top-level module or entity name.              |  |

| Option and Default   | Description   |
|--|---|
| Simulation waveform viewing<br>command<br>Default: 'add wave sim:%s\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the<br>simulation script waveform viewing command. The<br>top-level module or entity signal names are implicit<br>arguments. |
| Simulation termination   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Term   |
| Default: 'run -all\n'  | portion of the simulation script.   |

#### **Synthesis Script Options**

The following figure shows the **Synthesis script** pane, with all options set to their default values.

| 🍇 Configuration Parameter  | rs: sfir_fixed/Configuration (Active)  | × |
|--|--|---|
| Select:  | EDA Tool Scripts   |   |
| Solver     Data Import/Export     Optimization     Diagnostics     Sample Time     Oata Validity     Type Conversion     Connectivity     Compatibility     Model Referencing     Hardware Implementation     Model Referencing     Comments     Symbols     Custom Code     Debug     Interface     HDL Coder     Coloal Settings     Test Bench     EDA Tool Scripts | Generate EDA scripts Compilation script Simulation script Synthesis initialization: project -new %s.prj\n Synthesis command: add_file %s\n Synthesis termination: set_option -technology VIRTEX2\nset_option -part XC2V500\nset_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\nset_option -frequency auto\nproject -run synthesis\n |   |
|  | OK Cancel Help Apply   |   |

The following table summarizes the **Synthesis script** options.

| Option Name and Default   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Name: <b>Synthesis initialization</b><br>Default: 'project -new %s.prj\n' | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Init<br>section of the synthesis script. The default string is<br>a synthesis project creation command. The implicit |
|   | argument is the top-level module or entity name.  |
| Name: Synthesis command   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Cmd  |
| Default: 'add_file %s\n'  | section of the synthesis script. The argument is the filename of the entity or module.  |
| Name: Synthesis termination   | Format string passed to fprintf to write the Term   |
| Default:  | section of the synthesis script.  |
| ['set_option -technology VIRTEX2\n',                                      |   |
| <pre>'set_option -part XC2V500\n',</pre>                                  |   |
| 'set_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\n',                                 |   |
| 'set_option -frequency auto\n',   |   |
| 'project -run synthesis\n']   |   |

# 11

# Properties — By Category

| Language Selection Properties (p. 11-2)                   | Properties for selecting language of generated HDL code   |
|---|---|
| File Naming and Location Properties (p. 11-2)             | Properties that name and specify location of generated files  |
| Reset Properties (p. 11-2)                                | Properties that specify reset signals in generated code   |
| Header Comment and General<br>Naming Properties (p. 11-3) | Properties affecting generation<br>of header comments and process,<br>module, component instance, and<br>other name strings |
| Script Generation Properties<br>(p. 11-4)                 | Properties affecting generation<br>of script files for simulation and<br>synthesis tools                                    |
| Port Properties (p. 11-5)                                 | Properties that specify port<br>characteristics in generated code   |
| Advanced Coding Properties (p. 11-5)                      | Advanced HDL coding properties  |
| Test Bench Properties (p. 11-7)                           | Properties that specify generated test bench code   |
| Generated Model Properties (p. 11-7)                      | Properties for controlling naming<br>and appearance of generated models   |

## **Language Selection Properties**

TargetLanguage

Specify HDL language to use for generated code

### **File Naming and Location Properties**

| HDLMapPostfix        | Specify postfix string appended to file name for generated mapping file |
|----------------------|---|
| TargetDirectory      | Identify directory into which generated output files are written        |
| VerilogFileExtension | Specify file type extension for generated Verilog files                 |
| VHDLFileExtension    | Specify file type extension for generated VHDL files                    |

#### **Reset Properties**

| ResetAssertedLevel | Specify asserted (active) level of reset input signal   |
|--------------------|---|
| ResetType          | Specify whether to use asynchronous<br>or synchronous reset logic when<br>generating HDL code for registers |
| ResetValue         | Specify constant value to which test bench forces reset input signals                                       |

## **Header Comment and General Naming Properties**

| ClockProcessPostfix    | Specify string to append to HDL clock process names  |
|------------------------|--|
| EntityConflictPostfix  | Specify string to append to duplicate<br>VHDL entity or Verilog module<br>names  |
| InstancePrefix         | Specify string prefixed to generated component instance names  |
| PackagePostfix         | Specify string to append to specified<br>model or subsystem name to form<br>name of VHDL package file                    |
| ReservedWordPostfix    | Specify string to append to value<br>names, postfix values, or labels that<br>are VHDL or Verilog reserved words         |
| SplitArchFilePostfix   | Specify string to append to specified<br>name to form name of file containing<br>model's VHDL architecture               |
| SplitEntityArch        | Specify whether generated VHDL<br>entity and architecture code is<br>written to single VHDL file or to<br>separate files |
| SplitEntityFilePostfix | Specify string to append to specified<br>model name to form name of<br>generated VHDL entity file                        |
| VectorPrefix           | Specify string prefixed to vector names in generated code  |

## **Script Generation Properties**

| EDAScriptGeneration   | Enable or disable generation of script files for third-party tools                                      |
|-----------------------|---|
| HDLCompileFilePostfix | Specify postfix string appended to<br>file name for generated ModelSim<br>compilation scripts           |
| HDLCompileInit        | Specify string written to<br>initialization section of compilation<br>script                            |
| HDLCompileTerm        | Specify string written to termination section of compilation script                                     |
| HDLCompileVerilogCmd  | Specify command string written to compilation script for Verilog files                                  |
| HDLCompileVHDLCmd     | Specify command string written to compilation script for VHDL files                                     |
| HDLSimCmd             | Specify simulation command written to simulation script   |
| HDLSimFilePostfix     | Specify postfix string appended to<br>file name for generated ModelSim<br>test bench simulation scripts |
| HDLSimInit            | Specify string written to<br>initialization section of simulation<br>script                             |
| HDLSimTerm            | Specify string written to termination section of simulation script                                      |
| HDLSimViewWaveCmd     | Specify waveform viewing command written to simulation script   |
| HDLSynthCmd           | Specify command written to synthesis script   |
| HDLSynthFilePostfix   | Specify postfix string appended to<br>file name for generated Synplify<br>synthesis scripts             |

| HDLSynthInit | Specify string written to<br>initialization section of synthesis<br>script |
|--------------|--|
| HDLSynthTerm | Specify string written to termination section of synthesis script          |

## **Port Properties**

| ClockEnableInputPort  | Name HDL port for model's clock enable input signals                  |
|-----------------------|---|
| ClockEnableOutputPort | Specify name of clock enable output port                              |
| EnablePrefix          | Specify base name string for internal clock enables in generated code |
| InputType             | Specify HDL data type for model's input ports                         |
| OutputType            | Specify HDL data type for model's output ports                        |
| ResetInputPort        | Name HDL port for model's reset input                                 |

## **Advanced Coding Properties**

| BlockGenerateLabel | Specify string to append to block<br>labels used for HDL GENERATE<br>statements   |
|--------------------|---|
| CastBeforeSum      | Enable or disable type casting<br>of input values for addition and<br>subtraction operations before<br>execution of operation |

| CheckHDL              | Check model or subsystem for HDL code generation compatibility  |
|-----------------------|---|
| HDLControlfiles       | Attach code generation control file<br>to Simulink model  |
| InlineConfigurations  | Specify whether generated VHDL code includes inline configurations  |
| InstanceGenerateLabel | Specify string to append to instance<br>section labels in VHDL GENERATE<br>statements                             |
| LoopUnrolling         | Specify whether VHDL FOR and<br>GENERATE loops are unrolled and<br>omitted from generated VHDL code               |
| OutputGenerateLabel   | Specify string that labels output<br>assignment block for VHDL<br>GENERATE statements                             |
| SafeZeroConcat        | Specify syntax for concatenated zeros in generated VHDL code  |
| UseAggregatesForConst | Specify whether all constants are<br>represented by aggregates, including<br>constants that are less than 32 bits |
| UserComment           | Specify comment line in header of generated HDL and test bench files  |
| UseRisingEdge         | Specify VHDL coding style used<br>to check for rising edges when<br>operating on registers                        |
| UseVerilogTimescale   | Use compiler `timescale directives<br>in generated Verilog code   |
| Verbosity             | Specify level of detail for messages displayed during code generation   |

## **Test Bench Properties**

| ClockHighTime             | Specify period, in nanoseconds,<br>during which test bench drives clock<br>input signals high (1) |
|---------------------------|---|
| ClockInputPort            | Name HDL port for model's clock input signals   |
| ClockLowTime              | Specify period, in nanoseconds,<br>during which test bench drives clock<br>input signals low (0)  |
| ForceClock                | Specify whether test bench forces clock input signals   |
| ForceClockEnable          | Specify whether test bench forces clock enable input signals                                      |
| ForceReset                | Specify whether test bench forces reset input signals   |
| HoldTime                  | Specify hold time for input signals and forced reset input signals                                |
| SimulatorFlags            | Specify simulator flags to apply to your generated test bench                                     |
| TestBenchPostFix          | Specify suffix to test bench name   |
| TestBenchReferencePostFix | Specify string appended to names of<br>reference signals generated in test<br>bench code          |

## **Generated Model Properties**

| CodeGenerationOutput | Control production of generated code<br>and display of generated model |
|----------------------|--|
| Generatedmodelname   | Specify name of generated model  |

| Generatedmodelnameprefix | Specify prefix to name of generated model  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Highlightancestors       | Highlight ancestors of blocks in<br>generated model that differ from<br>original model |
| Highlightcolor           | Specify color for highlighted blocks in generated model                                |

12

## Properties — Alphabetical List

## BlockGenerateLabel

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to block labels used for HDL GENERATE statements   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>Specify a postfix string to append to block labels used for HDL GENERATE<br>statements. The default string is _gen. |
| See Also | InstanceGenerateLabel, OutputGenerateLabel  |

| Purpose  | Enable or disable type casting of input values for addition and<br>subtraction operations before execution of operation       |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'on'(default)   |
|          | Typecast input values in addition and subtraction operations to the result type before operating on the values.               |
|          | 'off'   |
|          | Preserve the types of input values during addition and subtraction operations and then convert the result to the result type. |
| See Also | InlineConfigurations, LoopUnrolling, SafeZeroConcat,<br>UseAggregatesForConst,UseRisingEdge,UseVerilogTimescale               |

## CheckHDL

| Purpose  | Check model or subsystem for HDL code generation compatibility  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'on'  |
|          | Check the model or subsystem for HDL compatibility before generating code, and report any problems encountered. This is equivalent to executing the checkhdl function before calling makehdl. |
|          | 'off' (default)   |
|          | Do not check the model or subsystem for HDL compatibility before generating code.   |
| See Also | checkhdl, makehdl   |

#### **Purpose** Name HDL port for model's clock enable input signals

#### Settings 'string'

The default name for the model's clock enable input port is clk\_enable.

If you override the default with (for example) the string 'filter\_clock\_enable' for the generating subsystem filter\_subsys, the generated entity declaration might look as follows:

```
ENTITY filter_subsys IS

PORT( clk : IN std_logic;

filter_clock_enable : IN std_logic;

reset : IN std_logic;

filter_subsys_in : IN std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0);

filter_subsys_out : OUT std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0);

);

END filter_subsys;
```

If you specify a string that is a VHDL or Verilog reserved word, the code generator appends a reserved word postfix string to form a valid VHDL or Verilog identifier. For example, if you specify the reserved word signal, the resulting name string would be signal\_rsvd. See ReservedWordPostfix for more information.

- UsageThe clock enable signal is asserted active high (1). Thus, the input valueNotesmust be high for the generated entity's registers to be updated.
- See Also ClockInputPort, InputType, OutputType, ResetInputPort

| Purpose  | Specify name of clock enable output port                                   |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The default name for the generated clock enable output port is $ce\_out$ . |
|          | A clock enable output is generated when the design requires one.           |

| Purpose        | Specify period, in nanoseconds, during which test bench drives clock input signals high $(1)$   |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | ns  |
|                | The default is 5.   |
|                | The ClockHighTime and ClockLowTime properties define the period and duty cycle for the clock signal. Using the defaults, the clock signal is a square wave (50% duty cycle) with a period of 10 ns. |
| Usage<br>Notes | Simulink HDL Coder ignores this property if <code>ForceClock</code> is set to <code>'off'</code> .  |
| See Also       | ClockLowTime, ForceClock, ForceClockEnable, ForceReset, HoldTime  |

## ClockInputPort

| Purpose  | Name HDL port for model's clock input signals  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The default clock input port name is clk.  |
|          | If you override the default with (for example) the string 'filter_clock'<br>for the generated entity my_filter, the generated entity declaration<br>might look as follows: |
|          | ENTITY my_filter IS  |
|          | <pre>PORT( filter_clock : IN std_logic;</pre>  |
|          | clk_enable : IN std_logic;   |
|          | reset : IN std_logic;  |
|          | <pre>my_filter_in : IN std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0); sfix16_En15</pre>   |
|          | <pre>my_filter_out : OUT std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0); sfix16_En15</pre>   |
|          | );   |
|          | END my_filter;   |

If you specify a string that is a VHDL reserved word, the code generator appends a reserved word postfix string to form a valid VHDL identifier. For example, if you specify the reserved word signal, the resulting name string would be signal\_rsvd. See ReservedWordPostfix for more information.

See Also ClockEnableInputPort, InputType, OutputType

| Purpose        | Specify period, in nanoseconds, during which test bench drives clock input signals low $(0)$  |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | The default is 5 ns.  |
|                | The ClockHighTime and ClockLowTime properties define the period and duty cycle for the clock signal. Using the defaults, the clock signal is a square wave (50% duty cycle) with a period of 10 ns. |
| Usage<br>Notes | Simulink HDL Coder ignores this property if ${\tt ForceClock}$ is set to 'off'.   |
| See Also       | ClockHighTime, ForceClock, ForceClockEnable, ForceReset,<br>HoldTime  |

## **ClockProcessPostfix**

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to HDL clock process names  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The default postfix is _process.   |
|          | Simulink HDL Coder uses process blocks for register operations.<br>The label for each of these blocks is derived from a register name<br>and the postfix _process. For example, the coder derives the label<br>delay_pipeline_process in the following block declaration from the<br>register name delay_pipeline and the default postfix string _process: |
|          | delay_pipeline_process : PROCESS (clk, reset)<br>BEGIN   |
|          |  |
|          |  |
| See Also | PackagePostfix, ReservedWordPostfix  |

| Purpose  | Control production of generated code and display of generated model        |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | 'GenerateHDLCode' (default)  |
|          | Generate code but do not display the generated model.                      |
|          | 'GenerateHDLCodeAndDisplayGeneratedModel'                                  |
|          | Generate both code and model, and display model when completed.            |
|          | 'DisplayGeneratedModelOnly'  |
|          | Create and display generated model, but do not proceed to code generation. |
| See Also | "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12                   |

## **EDAScriptGeneration**

| Purpose  | Enable or disable generation of script files for third-party tools      |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'on' (default)  |
|          | Enable generation of script files.                                      |
|          | 'off'   |
|          | Disable generation of script files.                                     |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

| Purpose        | Specify base name string for internal clock enables in generated code  |
|----------------|--|
| Settings       | 'string'   |
|                | Specify the string used as the base name for internal clock enables and other flow control signals in generated code. The default string is 'enb'.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | Where only a single clock enable is generated, EnablePrefix specifies the signal name for the internal clock enable signal.  |
|                | In some cases multiple clock enables are generated (for example, when<br>a cascade block implementation for certain blocks is specified). In such<br>cases, EnablePrefix specifies a base signal name for the first clock<br>enable that is generated. For other clock enable signals, numeric tags<br>are appended to EnablePrefix to form unique signal names. For<br>example, the following code fragment illustrates two clock enables that<br>were generated when EnablePrefix was set to 'test_clk_enable' : |
|                | COMPONENT Timing_Controller  |
|                | PORT( clk : IN std_logic;  |
|                | reset : IN std_logic;  |
|                | clk_enable : IN std_logic;   |
|                | test_clk_enable : OUT std_logic;   |
|                | test_clk_enable_5_1_0 : OUT  |
|                | );   |
|                |  |

END COMPONENT;

# **EntityConflictPostfix**

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to duplicate VHDL entity or Verilog module names  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The specified postfix resolves duplicate VHDL entity or Verilog module names. The default string is _entity.   |
|          | For example, if Simulink HDL Coder detects two entities with the name MyFilt, the coder names the first entity MyFilt and the second instance MyFilt_entity. |
| See Also | PackagePostfix, ReservedWordPostfix  |

| Purpose  | Specify whether test bench forces clock input signals   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'on' (default)  |
|          | Specify that the test bench forces the clock input signals. When this option is set, the clock high and low time settings control the clock waveform. |
|          | 'off'   |
|          | Specify that a user-defined external source forces the clock input signals.   |
| See Also | ClockLowTime, ClockHighTime, ForceClockEnable, ForceReset,<br>HoldTime  |

### ForceClockEnable

| Purpose  | Specify whether test bench forces clock enable input signals   |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'on' (default)   |
|          | Specify that the test bench forces the clock enable input signals to active high $(1)$ or active low $(0)$ , depending on the setting of the clock enable input value. |
|          | 'off'  |
|          | Specify that a user-defined external source forces the clock enable input signals.   |
| See Also | ClockHighTime, ClockLowTime, ForceClock, HoldTime  |

| Purpose  | Specify whether test bench forces reset input signals   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'on' (default)  |
|          | Specify that the test bench forces the reset input signals. If you enable this option, you can also specify a hold time to control the timing of a reset. |
|          | 'off'   |
|          | Specify that a user-defined external source forces the reset input signals.   |
| See Also | ClockHighTime, ClockLowTime, ForceClock, HoldTime   |

### Generatedmodelname

| Purpose  | Specify name of generated model  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | By default, the name of a generated model is the same as that of the original model. Assign a string value to Generatemodelname to override the default. |
| See Also | "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12   |

| Purpose  | Specify prefix to name of generated model                |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default prefix is 'gm_'.                 |
| See Also | "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12 |

## HDLCompileInit

| Purpose  | Specify string written to initialization section of compilation script  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default string is 'vlib work\n'.                        |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

| Purpose  | Specify string written to termination section of compilation script     |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default is the null string ('').                        |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

| Purpose | Specify postfix string appended to file name for generated ModelSim compilation scripts |
|---------|---|
|         |   |

#### Settings 'string'

The default postfix is \_compile.do.

For example, if the name of the device under test or test bench is my\_design, Simulink HDL Coder adds the postfix \_compile.do to form the name my\_design\_compile.do.

| Purpose  | Specify command string written to compilation script for Verilog files  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default string is 'vlog %s %s\n'.   |
|          | The two arguments are the contents of the 'SimulatorFlags' property<br>and the file name of the current entity or module. To omit the flags, set<br>'SimulatorFlags' to '' (the default). |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools"   |

## HDLCompileVHDLCmd

| Purpose  | Specify command string written to compilation script for VHDL files   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default string is 'vcom %s %s∖n'.   |
|          | The default string is voon %5 %S\II.  |
|          | The two arguments are the contents of the 'SimulatorFlags' property<br>and the file name of the current entity or module. To omit the flags, set<br>'SimulatorFlags' to '' (the default). |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools"   |

| Purpose        | Attach code generation control file to Simulink model  |
|----------------|--|
| Settings       | {'string'}   |
|                | Pass in a cell array containing a string that specifies a control file to<br>be attached to the current model. Defaults are                                      |
|                | • File name extension: .m  |
|                | • Path: the control file is assumed to be on the MATLAB path or in the current working directory. If the file is elsewhere, enter a full path name.              |
|                | <b>Note</b> The current release supports specification of a single control file.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | To clear the property (so that no control file is invoked during code generation), pass in a cell array containing the null string, as in the following example: |
|                | <pre>makehdl(gcb,'HDLControlFiles',{''});</pre>  |
| See Also       | For a detailed description of the structure and use of control files, see<br>Chapter 4, "Code Generation Control Files".   |

## **HDLM**apPostfix

| Purpose  | Specify postfix string appended to file name for generated mapping file  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The default postfix is '_map.txt'.   |
|          | For example, if the name of the device under test is my_design,<br>Simulink HDL Coder adds the postfix _map.txt to form the name<br>my_design_map.txt. |

#### HDLSimCmd

| Purpose  | Specify simulation command written to simulation script                 |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default string is 'vsim work.%s\n'.                                 |
|          | The implicit argument is the top-level module or entity name.           |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

#### **HDLSimInit**

| Purpose  | Specify string written to initialization section of simulation script   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default string is                                       |
|          | ['onbreak resume\n',<br>'onerror resume\n']                             |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

## Purpose Specify postfix string appended to file name for generated ModelSim test bench simulation scripts

Settings 'string'

The default postfix is \_sim.do.

For example, if the name of your test bench file is my\_design, Simulink HDL Coder adds the postfix \_sim.do to form the name my\_design\_tb\_sim.do.

#### **HDLSimTerm**

| Purpose  | Specify string written to termination section of simulation script      |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default string is 'run -all\n'.                         |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

| Purpose  | Specify waveform viewing command written to simulation script           |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default string is 'add wave sim:%s\n'                               |
|          | The implicit argument is the top-level module or entity name.           |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

## HDLSynthCmd

| Purpose  | Specify command written to synthesis script                             |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default string is 'add_file $s \in n'$ .                            |
|          | The implicit argument is the file name of the entity or module.         |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

| Purpose  | Specify string written to initialization section of synthesis script                          |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default string is 'project -new %s.prj\n', which is a synthesis project creation command. |
|          | The implicit argument is the top-level module or entity name.                                 |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools"                       |

#### **HDLSynthFilePostfix**

| Purpose  | Specify postfix string appended to file name for generated Synplify synthesis scripts |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default postfix is _synplify.tcl.   |
|          | The second of the second of the device and be test is not device an                   |

For example, if the name of the device under test is my\_design, Simulink HDL Coder adds the postfix \_synplify.tcl to form the name my\_design\_synplify.tcl.

| Purpose  | Specify string written to termination section of synthesis script       |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default string is   |
|          | ['set_option -technology VIRTEX2\n',                                    |
|          | 'set_option -part XC2V500\n',   |
|          | 'set_option -synthesis_onoff_pragma 0\n',                               |
|          | 'set_option -frequency auto\n',   |
|          | 'project -run synthesis\n']   |
| See Also | Chapter 10, "Generating Scripts for HDL Simulators and Synthesis Tools" |

## Highlightancestors

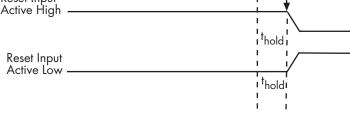
| Purpose  | Highlight ancestors of blocks in generated model that differ from original model   |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'on' (default)   |
|          | Highlight blocks in a generated model that differ from the original model, and their ancestor (parent) blocks in the model hierarchy.                          |
|          | 'off'  |
|          | Highlight only the blocks in a generated model that differ from the original model without highlighting their ancestor (parent) blocks in the model hierarchy. |
| See Also | "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12   |

| Purpose  | Specify color for highlighted blocks in generated model   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default color specification is 'cyan'.<br>Specify the color as one of the following color string values:          |
|          | <ul> <li>cyan</li> <li>yellow</li> <li>magenta</li> <li>red</li> <li>green</li> <li>blue</li> <li>white</li> <li>black</li> </ul> |
| · · · ·  |   |

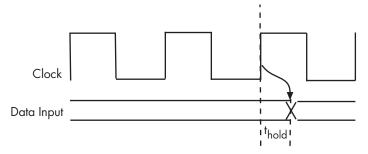
#### **See Also** "Defaults and Options for Generated Models" on page 5-12

### HoldTime

| Purpose        | Specify hold time for input signals and forced reset input signals  |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | ns  |
|                | Specify the number of nanoseconds (a positive integer) during which the model's data input signals and forced reset input signals are held past the clock rising edge. The default is 2.  |
|                | This option applies to reset input signals only if forced resets are enabled.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | The hold time is the amount of time that reset input signals and input data are held past the clock rising edge. The following figures show the application of a hold time $(t_{hold})$ for reset and data input signals when the signals are forced to active high and active low. |
|                | Clock Clock Reset Input<br>Active High  |







#### Hold Time for Data Input Signals

**Note** A reset signal is always asserted for two cycles plus  $t_{hold}$ .

See Also ClockHighTime, ClockLowTime, ForceClock

## **InlineConfigurations**

| Purpose        | Specify whether generated VHDL code includes inline configurations  |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | 'on' (default)  |
|                | Include VHDL configurations in any file that instantiates a component.  |
|                | 'off'   |
|                | Suppress the generation of configurations and require user-supplied<br>external configurations. Use this setting if you are creating your own<br>VHDL configuration files.  |
| Usage<br>Notes | VHDL configurations can be either inline with the rest of the VHDL<br>code for an entity or external in separate VHDL source files. By default,<br>Simulink HDL Coder includes configurations for a model within the<br>generated VHDL code. If you are creating your own VHDL configuration<br>files, you should suppress the generation of inline configurations. |
| See Also       | LoopUnrolling, SafeZeroConcat, UseAggregatesForConst,<br>UseRisingEdge  |

## InputType

| Purpose  | Specify HDL data type for model's input ports   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'std_logic_vector'<br>Specifies VHDL type STD_LOGIC_VECTOR for the model's input ports.<br>'signed/unsigned'<br>Specifies VHDL type SIGNED or UNSIGNED for the model's input ports. |
|          | 'wire' (Verilog)  |
|          | If the target language is Verilog, the data type for all ports is wire. This property is not modifiable in this case.   |
| See Also | ClockEnableInputPort,,OutputType  |

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to instance section labels in VHDL GENERATE statements   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>Specify a postfix string to append to instance section labels in VHDL<br>GENERATE statements. The default string is _gen. |
| See Also | BlockGenerateLabel,OutputGenerateLabel  |

#### **Purpose** Specify string prefixed to generated component instance names

Settings 'string'

Specify a string to be prefixed to component instance names in generated code. The default string is  $u_{-}$ .

## LoopUnrolling

| Purpose        | Specify whether VHDL FOR and GENERATE loops are unrolled and omitted from generated VHDL code   |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | 'on'  |
|                | Unroll and omit FOR and GENERATE loops from the generated VHDL code.  |
|                | In Verilog code, loops are always unrolled.   |
|                | If you are using an electronic design automation (EDA) tool that does<br>not support GENERATE loops, you can enable this option to omit loops<br>from your generated VHDL code. |
|                | 'off' (default)   |
|                | Include FOR and GENERATE loops in the generated VHDL code.  |
| Usage<br>Notes | The setting of this option does not affect results obtained from simulation or synthesis of generated VHDL code.  |
| See Also       | InlineConfigurations, SafeZeroConcat, UseAggregatesForConst,<br>UseRisingEdge   |

| Purpose  | Specify string that labels output assignment block for VHDL $\ensuremath{GENERATE}$ statements  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>Specify a postfix string to append to output assignment block labels in<br>VHDL GENERATE statements. The default string is outputgen. |
| See Also | BlockGenerateLabel, OutputGenerateLabel   |

## OutputType

| Purpose  | Specify HDL data type for model's output ports  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'std_logic_vector' (VHDL default)<br>Output ports have VHDL type STD_LOGIC_VECTOR.                                    |
|          | 'signed/unsigned'<br>Output ports have type SIGNED or UNSIGNED.<br>'wire' (Verilog)                                   |
|          | If the target language is Verilog, the data type for all ports is wire. This property is not modifiable in this case. |
| See Also | ClockEnableInputPort, InputType   |

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to specified model or subsystem name to form name of VHDL package file              |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |
|          | The coder applies this option only if a package file is required for the design. The default string is _pkg. |
| See Also | ClockProcessPostfix, EntityConflictPostfix,<br>ReservedWordPostfix   |

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to value names, postfix values, or labels that are VHDL or Verilog reserved words  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default postfix is _rsvd.   |
|          | The reserved word postfix is applied to signals and constants that have<br>names conflicting with VHDL or Verilog reserved words. For example,<br>if your generating model contains a signal named mod, Simulink HDL<br>Coder adds the postfix _rsvd to form the name mod_rsvd. |
| See Also | ClockProcessPostfix, EntityConflictPostfix,<br>ReservedWordPostfix  |

**Purpose** Specify asserted (active) level of reset input signal

Settings 'active-high' (default)

Specify that the reset input signal must be driven high (1) to reset registers in the model. For example, the following code fragment checks whether reset is active high before populating the delay\_pipeline register:

```
Delay_Pipeline_Process : PROCESS (clk, reset)
BEGIN
IF reset = '1' THEN
    delay_pipeline(0 T0 50) <= (OTHERS => (OTHERS => '0'));
.
```

'active-low'

Specify that the reset input signal must be driven low (0) to reset registers in the model. For example, the following code fragment checks whether reset is active low before populating the delay\_pipeline register:

```
Delay_Pipeline_Process : PROCESS (clk, reset)
BEGIN
IF reset = '0' THEN
    delay_pipeline(0 T0 50) <= (OTHERS => (OTHERS => '0'));
.
```

See Also ResetType

#### ResetInputPort

| Purpose        | Name HDL port for model's reset input  |
|----------------|--|
| Settings       | 'string'   |
|                | The default name for the model's reset input port is reset.  |
|                | If you override the default with (for example) the string 'chip_reset'<br>for the generating system myfilter, the generated entity declaration<br>might look as follows:   |
|                | ENTITY myfilter IS   |
|                | <pre>PORT( clk : IN std_logic;</pre>   |
|                | clk_enable : IN std_logic;   |
|                | chip_reset : IN std_logic;   |
|                | <pre>myfilter_in : IN std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0);</pre>  |
|                | <pre>myfilter_out : OUT std_logic_vector (15 DOWNTO 0);</pre>  |
|                | );   |
|                | END myfilter;  |
|                | If you specify a string that is a VHDL reserved word, the code generator<br>appends a reserved word postfix string to form a valid VHDL identifier.<br>For example, if you specify the reserved word signal, the resulting<br>name string would be signal_rsvd. See ReservedWordPostfix for<br>more information.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | If the reset asserted level is set to active high, the reset input signal is asserted active high $(1)$ and the input value must be high $(1)$ for the entity's registers to be reset. If the reset asserted level is set to active low, the reset input signal is asserted active low $(0)$ and the input value must be low $(0)$ for the entity's registers to be reset. |
| See Also       | ClockEnableInputPort, InputType, OutputType  |

# **Purpose**Specify whether to use asynchronous or synchronous reset logic when<br/>generating HDL code for registers

#### Settings 'async' (default)

Use asynchronous reset logic. The following process block, generated by a Unit Delay block, illustrates the use of asynchronous resets. When the reset signal is asserted, the process block performs a reset, without checking for a clock event.

```
Unit_Delay1_process : PROCESS (clk, reset)
BEGIN

IF reset = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= (OTHERS => '0');
ELSIF clk'event AND clk = '1' THEN
IF clk_enable = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= signed(x_in);
END IF;
END IF;
END PROCESS Unit Delay1 process;</pre>
```

'sync'

Use synchronous reset logic. Code for a synchronous reset follows. The following process block, generated by a Unit Delay block, checks for a clock event, the rising edge, before performing a reset:

```
Unit_Delay1_process : PROCESS (clk)
BEGIN
IF rising_edge(clk) THEN
IF reset = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= (OTHERS => '0');
ELSIF clk_enable = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= signed(x_in);
END IF;
END IF;</pre>
```

#### ResetType

END PROCESS Unit\_Delay1\_process;

See Also ResetAssertedLevel

| Purpose        | Specify constant value to which test bench forces reset input signals   |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | 'active high' (default)   |
|                | Specify that the test bench set the reset input signal to active high $(1)$ .   |
|                | 'active low'  |
|                | Specify that the test bench set the reset input signal to active low $(0)$ .  |
| Usage<br>Notes | The setting for this option must match the setting of the reset asserted<br>level specified for the test bench. Simulink HDL Coder ignores the<br>setting of this option if forced resets are disabled. |
| See Also       | ForceReset, ResetType, ResetAssertedLevel   |

#### SafeZeroConcat

| Purpose  | Specify syntax for concatenated zeros in generated VHDL code   |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'on' (default)   |
|          | Use the type-safe syntax, '0' & '0', for concatenated zeros. Typically, this syntax is preferred.  |
|          | 'off'  |
|          | Use the syntax "000000" for concatenated zeros. This syntax can be easier to read and is more compact, but it can lead to ambiguous types. |
| See Also | LoopUnrolling, UseAggregatesForConst, UseRisingEdge  |

| Purpose        | Specify simulator flags to apply to your generated test bench  |
|----------------|--|
| Settings       | 'string'   |
|                | Specify options that are specific to your application and the simulator<br>you are using. For example, if you must use the 1076–1993 VHDL<br>compiler, specify the flag -93.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | The flags you specify with this option are added to the compilation<br>command in generated ModelSim .do test bench files. The<br>simulation command string is specified by the HDLCompileVHDLCmd or<br>HDLCompileVerilogCmd properties. |

# **SplitArchFilePostfix**

| Purpose        | Specify string to append to specified name to form name of file containing model's VHDL architecture  |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | 'string'  |
|                | The default is _arch. This option applies only if you direct Simulink HDL Coder to place the generated VHDL entity and architecture code in separate files. |
| Usage<br>Notes | The option applies only if you direct Simulink HDL Coder to place the filter's entity and architecture in separate files.                                   |
| See Also       | SplitEntityArch, SplitEntityFilePostfix   |

| Purpose  | Specify whether generated VHDL entity and architecture code is written to single VHDL file or to separate files  |
|----------|--|
| Settings | ' on '   |
|          | Write the generated VHDL code to a single file.  |
|          | 'off'(default)   |
|          | Write the code for the generated VHDL entity and architecture to separate files.   |
|          | The names of the entity and architecture files derive from the base<br>file name (as specified by the generating model or subsystem name).<br>By default, postfix strings identifying the file as an entity (_entity)<br>or architecture (_arch ) are appended to the base file name. You can<br>override the default and specify your own postfix string. |
|          | For example, instead of all generated code residing in MyFIR.vhd,<br>you can specify that the code reside in MyFIR_entity.vhd and<br>MyFIR_arch.vhd.   |
|          | <b>Note</b> This property is specific to VHDL code generation. It does not apply to Verilog code generation and should not be enabled when generating Verilog code.  |
| See Also | SplitArchFilePostfix,,SplitEntityFilePostfix   |

# **SplitEntityFilePostfix**

| Purpose  | Specify string to append to specified model name to form name of generated VHDL entity file   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The default is _entity. This option applies only if you direct Simulink HDL Coder to place the generated VHDL entity and architecture code in separate files. |
| See Also | SplitArchFilePostfix, SplitEntityArch   |

| Purpose  | Identify directory into which generated output files are written  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | Specify a subdirectory under the current working directory into which generated files are written. The string can specify a complete path name. The default string is hdlsrc. |
|          | If the target directory does not exist, Simulink HDL Coder creates it.  |
| See Also | VerilogFileExtension, VHDLFileExtension   |

## TargetLanguage

| Purpose  | Specify HDL language to use for generated code |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'VHDL' (default)                               |
|          | Generate VHDL filter code.                     |
|          | 'verilog'                                      |
|          | Generate Verilog filter code.                  |
|          |  |

**Purpose** Specify suffix to test bench name

Settings 'string'

The default postfix is '\_tb'.

For example, if the name of your DUT is my\_test, Simulink HDL Coder adds the postfix \_tb to form the name my\_test\_tb.

| Purpose  | Specify string appended to names of reference signals generated in test bench code |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'   |

The default postfix is '\_ref'.

Reference signal data is represented as arrays in the generated test bench code. The string specified by TestBenchReferencePostFix is appended to the generated signal names. Purpose Specify whether all constants are represented by aggregates, including constants that are less than 32 bits **Settings** 'on' Specify that all constants, including constants that are less than 32 bits, be represented by aggregates. The following VHDL constant declarations show scalars less than 32 bits being declared as aggregates: CONSTANT coeff1 :signed(15 DOWNTO 0) := (4 DOWNTO 2 => '0', 0 => '0', OTHERS => ', '); CONSTANT coeff2 :signed(15 DOWNTO 0) := (6 => '0', 4 DOWNTO 3 => '0', OTHERS => ', '); 'off' (default) Specify that the coder represent constants less than 32 bits as scalars and constants greater than or equal to 32 bits as aggregates. The following VHDL constant declarations are examples of declarations generated by default for values less than 32 bits: CONSTANT coeff1 :signed(15 DOWNTO 0) := to\_signed(-30, 16); -- sfix16\_En15 CONSTANT coeff2 :signed(15 DOWNTO 0) := to\_signed(-89, 16); -- sfix16\_En15 See Also LoopUnrolling, SafeZeroConcat, UseRisingEdge

#### **UserComment**

| Purpose  | Specify comment line in header of generated HDL and test bench files  |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'  |
|          | The comment is generated in each of the generated code and test<br>bench files. The code generator adds leading comment characters as<br>appropriate for the target language. When newlines or line feeds are<br>included in the string, the code generator emits single-line comments<br>for each newline. |
|          | For example, the following makehdl command adds two comment lines to the header in a generated VHDL file.   |
|          | <pre>makehdl(gcb,'UserComment','This is a comment line.\nThis is a second line.')</pre>   |
|          | The resulting header comment block for subsystem symmetric_fir would appear as follows:   |
|          |   |
|          |   |
|          | Module: symmetric_fir   |
|          | Simulink Path: sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir<br>Created: 2006-11-20 15:55:25   |
|          | Created: 2006-11-20 15:55:25  |
|          |   |
|          | This is a comment line.   |
|          | This is a second line.  |
|          |   |
|          | Simulink model description for sfir_fixed:  |
|          | This model shows how to use Simulink HDL Coder to check, generate,  |
|          | and verify HDL for a fixed-point symmetric FIR filter.  |
|          |   |
|          |   |

```
Purpose Specify VHDL coding style used to check for rising edges when operating on registers
```

#### Settings

'on'

Use the VHDL rising\_edge function to check for rising edges when operating on registers. The following code, generated from a Unit Delay block, tests rising\_edge as shown in the following PROCESS block:

```
Unit_Delay1_process : PROCESS (clk, reset)
BEGIN
IF reset = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= (OTHERS => '0');
ELSIF rising_edge(clk) THEN
IF clk_enable = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= signed(x_in);
END IF;
END IF;
END PROCESS Unit_Delay1_process;</pre>
```

'off' (default)

Check for clock events when operating on registers. The following code, generated from a Unit Delay block, checks for a clock event as shown in the ELSIF statement of the following PROCESS block:

```
Unit_Delay1_process : PROCESS (clk, reset)
BEGIN
IF reset = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= (OTHERS => '0');
ELSIF clk'event AND clk = '1' THEN
IF clk_enable = '1' THEN
Unit_Delay1_out1 <= signed(x_in);
END IF;
END IF;</pre>
```

## UseRisingEdge

END PROCESS Unit\_Delay1\_process;

| Usage<br>Notes | The two coding styles have different simulation behavior when the clock transitions from 'X' to '1'. |
|----------------|--|
| See Also       | LoopUnrolling, SafeZeroConcat, UseAggregatesForConst   |

| Purpose        | Use compiler `timescale directives in generated Verilog code  |
|----------------|---|
| Settings       | 'on' (default)  |
|                | Use compiler `timescale directives in generated Verilog code.   |
|                | 'off'   |
|                | Suppress the use of compiler `timescale directives in generated Verilog code.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | The `timescale directive provides a way of specifying different delay values for multiple modules in a Verilog file. This setting does not affect the generated test bench. |
| See Also       | LoopUnrolling, SafeZeroConcat, UseAggregatesForConst,<br>UseRisingEdge  |

#### **VectorPrefix**

| Purpose  | Specify string prefixed to vector names in generated code   |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>Specify a string to be prefixed to vector names in generated code. The<br>default string is vector_of |

#### Purpose Specify level of detail for messages displayed during code generation

#### Settings

n

The default for n is 0 (minimal messages displayed).

When Verbosity is set to 0, minimal code generation progress messages are displayed in the MATLAB window. When Verbosity is set to 1, more detailed progress messages are displayed.

# **VerilogFileExtension**

| Purpose  | Specify file type extension for generated Verilog files                        |
|----------|--|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default file type extension for generated Verilog files is .v. |
| See Also | TargetDirectory  |

| Purpose  | Specify file type extension for generated VHDL files                          |
|----------|---|
| Settings | 'string'<br>The default file type extension for generated VHDL files is .vhd. |
| See Also | TargetDirectory   |

13

# Functions — Alphabetical List

## checkhdl

| Purpose     | Check subsystem or model for compatibility with HDL code generation   |
|-------------|---|
| Syntax      | <pre>checkhdl<br/>checkhdl(bdroot)<br/>checkhdl('modelname')<br/>checkhdl('modelname/subsys')<br/>checkhdl(gcb)<br/>output = checkhdl(arg)</pre>  |
| Description | checkhdl is a utility that checks a subsystem or model for compatibility<br>with HDL code generation. If any incompatibilities are detected<br>(for example, use of unsupported blocks or illegal data type usage),<br>checkhdl displays information on the blocks and potential problems<br>in an HTML report. |
|             | checkhdl examines (by default) the current Simulink model for compatibility with HDL code generation.   |
|             | checkhdl(bdroot) examines the current Simulink model for compatibility with HDL code generation.  |
|             | checkhdl('modelname') examines the Simulink model explicitly specified by 'modelname' for compatibility with HDL code generation.   |
|             | checkhdl('modelname/subsys') examines a specified subsystem<br>within the Simulink model specified by 'modelname' for compatibility<br>with HDL code generation.  |
|             | 'subsys' specifies the name of the subsystem to be checked. In the<br>current release, 'subsys' must be at the top (root) level of the current<br>Simulink model; it cannot be a subsystem nested at a lower level of<br>the model hierarchy.   |
|             | checkhdl(gcb) examines the currently selected subsystem within the current Simulink model for compatibility with HDL code generation.   |
|             | checkhdl generates an HTML HDL Code Generation Check Report.<br>The report file-naming convention is <i>system_</i> report.html, where<br><i>system</i> is the name of the subsystem or model that was passed in to   |
|             |   |

checkhdl. The report is written to the target directory. checkhdl also displays the report in a browser window.

The report is in table format. Each entry in the table is hyperlinked to a block or subsystem that caused a problem. When you click the hyperlink, Simulink highlights and displays the block of interest (provided that the model referenced by the report is open).

If no errors are encountered, the report contains only a hyperlink to the subsystem or model that was checked.

Alternatively, you can also specify an output argument, using the following syntax:

```
output = checkhdl(arg)
```

where *arg* specifies a model or subsystem in any of the forms described previously.

When an output argument is specified, checkhol returns a 1xN MATLAB struct array with one entry for each error, warning or message. In this case, no report is generated (see "Examples" on page 13-4).

The MathWorks strongly recommends that you use checkhdl to check your subsystems or models before generating HDL code.

checkhdl reports three levels of compatibility problems:

- *Errors*: Errors will cause makehdl to error out. These issues must be fixed before HDL code can be generated. A typical error would be the use of an unsupported data type. For example, the current release does not support complex numbers.
- *Warnings*: Warnings may cause problems in the generated code, but generally allow HDL code generation to continue. For example, the presence of an unsupported block in the model would raise a warning. In this case, the code generator attempts to proceed as if the block were not present in the design. This could lead to errors later in the code generation process, which would then terminate.

|          | • <i>Messages</i> : Messages are indications that the HDL code generator<br>may treat data types in a way that differs from what might be<br>expected. For example, single-precision floating-point data types are<br>automatically converted to double-precision because neither VHDL<br>nor Verilog support single-precision data types. |
|----------|--|
|          | <b>Note</b> If a model or subsystem passes checkhdl without errors, that does <i>not</i> imply that makehdl will complete successfully, since not all block parameters are verified in this release. However, if checkhdl reports an error, makehdl will not successfully complete HDL code generation.                                    |
|          | For convenience, checkhdl also takes the same property-value pairs as makehdl and makehdltb.   |
| Examples | The following example checks the subsystem symmetric_fir within the model sfir_fixed for HDL code generation compatibility. If problems are encountered, an HTML report is generated.  |
|          | checkhdl('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir')   |
|          | The following example checks the subsystem symmetric_fir_err<br>within the model sfir_fixed_err for HDL code generation<br>compatibility. Information on problems encountered is returned in the<br>struct output. The first element of output is then displayed.  |
|          | output = checkhdl('sfir_fixed_err/symmetric_fir_err')  |
|          | ### Starting HDL Check.  |
|          | <br>### HDL Check Complete with 4 errors, warnings and messages.   |
|          | output =   |
|          | 1x4 struct array with fields:  |
|          | path   |
|          | type   |
|          |  |

```
message
level
output(1)
ans =
    path: 'sfir_fixed_err/symmetric_fir_err/Product'
    type: 'block'
message: 'Unhandled mixed double and non-double datatypes at ports of block'
    level: 'Error'
```

See Also makehdl

#### hdllib

| Purpose     | Create Simulink library of blocks that support HDL code generation   |
|-------------|--|
| Syntax      | hdllib   |
| Description | hdllib creates a library of blocks that are supported for HDL code generation. The library is named hdlsupported.mdl. After the library is generated, you must save it to a directory of your choice.                        |
|             | hdllib loads many Simulink libraries during the creation of the<br>hdlsupported library. (This will cause a license checkout.) When<br>hdllib completes generation of the library, it does not unload Simulink<br>libraries. |
|             | The hdlsupported library affords quick access to all supported blocks.<br>By constructing models using blocks from this library, you can ensure<br>block-level compatibility of your model with Simulink HDL Coder.          |
|             | The set of supported blocks will change in future releases of Simulink HDL Coder. To keep the hdlsupported.mdl current, The MathWorks recommends that you rebuild the library and table each time you install a new release. |

| Purpose     | Generate forEach calls for insertion into code generation control files   |
|-------------|---|
| Syntax      | <pre>hdlnewforeach hdlnewforeach('blockpath') hdlnewforeach({'blockpath1','blockpath2',}) [cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach [cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach('blockpath') [cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach({'blockpath1','blockpath2',})</pre>  |
| Description | Simulink HDL Coder provides the hdlnewforeach utility to help you construct forEach calls for use in code generation control files. Given a selection of one or more blocks from your model, hdlnewforeach returns the following for each selected block, as string data in the MATLAB workspace: |
|             | • A forEach call coded with the correct modelscope, blocktype, and default implementation arguments for the block   |
|             | • (Optional) A cell array of strings enumerating the available implementations for the block, in package.class form   |
|             | hdlnewforeach returns a forEach call for each selected block in the model. Each call is returned as a string.   |
|             | hdlnewforeach('blockpath') returns a forEach call for a specified block in the model. The call is returned as a string.   |
|             | The 'blockpath' argument is a string specifying the full Simulink path to the desired block.  |
|             | hdlnewforeach({'blockpath1','blockpath2',}) returns a forEach call for each specified block in the model. Each call is returned as a string.  |
|             | The { 'blockpath1', 'blockpath2',} argument is a cell array of strings, each of which specifies the full Simulink path to a desired block.  |
|             | [cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach returns a forEach call for each selected block in the model to the string variable cmd. In addition, the  |
|             |   |

|                | call returns a cell array of cell arrays of strings (impl) enumerating the available implementations for the block.  |
|----------------|--|
|                | <pre>[cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach('blockpath') returns a forEach call<br/>for a specified block in the model to the string variable cmd. In addition,<br/>the call returns a cell array of strings (impl) enumerating the available<br/>implementations for the block.</pre>  |
|                | The 'blockpath' argument is a string specifying the full Simulink path to the desired block.   |
|                | <pre>[cmd, impl] = hdlnewforeach({'blockpath1', 'blockpath2',}) returns a forEach call for each specified block in the model to the string variable cmd. In addition, the call returns a cell array of cell arrays of strings (impl) enumerating the available implementations for the block.</pre>  |
|                | The { 'blockpath1', 'blockpath2',} argument is a cell array of strings, each of which specifies the full Simulink path to a desired block.   |
| Usage<br>Notes | Before invoking hdlnewforeach, you must run checkhdl or makehdl<br>to build in-memory information about the model. If you do not run<br>checkhdl or makehdl, hdlnewforeach will display an error message<br>indicating that you should run checkhdl or makehdl.  |
|                | hdlnewforeach returns an empty string for blocks that do not have an HDL implementation. hdlnewforeach also returns an empty string for subsystems, which are a special case. Subsystems do not have a default implementation class, but special-purpose subsystems implementations are provided (see Chapter 7, "Interfacing Subsystems and Models to HDL Code"). |
|                | After invoking hdlnewforeach, you will generally want to insert the forEach calls returned by the function into a control file, and use the implementation information returned to specify a nondefault block implementation. See "Generating Selection/Action Statements with the hdlnewforeach Function" on page 4-17 for a worked example.                      |
| Examples       | The following example generates forEach commands for two explicitly specified blocks.  |

```
hdlnewforeach({'sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Product2'})
ans =
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'built-in/Sum', {},...
'hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission', {});
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Product2',...
'built-in/Product', {},...
'hdldefaults.ProductLinearHDLEmission', {});
```

The following example generates a forEach command for an explicitly specified Sum block. The implementation information is listed after the forEach command.

```
[cmd,imp1] = hdlnewforeach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4')
cmd =
c.forEach('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir/Add4',...
'built-in/Sum', {},...
'hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission', {});
imp1 =
    {3x1 cell}
>> imp1{1}
ans =
    'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission'
    'hdldefaults.SumLinearHDLEmission'
    'hdldefaults.SumTreeHDLEmission'
    'hdldefaults.SumCascadeHDLEmission'
```

## hdlsetup

| Purpose     | Set Simulink model parameters for HDL code generation  |
|-------------|--|
| Syntax      | hdlsetup<br>hdlsetup('model')  |
| Description | hdlsetup changes the parameters of the current Simulink model (bdroot) to values that are commonly used for HDL code generation.   |
|             | hdlsetup('model') changes the parameters of the Simulink model specified by the 'model' argument to values that are commonly used for HDL code generation.   |
|             | A model should be open in Simulink before you invoke the hdlsetup command.   |
|             | The hdlsetup command uses the Simulink set_param function to set<br>up models for HDL code generation quickly and consistently. The model<br>parameters settings provided by hdlsetup are intended as useful<br>defaults, but they may not be appropriate for all your applications. |
|             | To view the complete set of model parameters affected by hdlsetup, view hdlsetup.m in the MATLAB editor.   |
|             | See the "Model Parameters" table in the "Model and Block Parameters" section of the Simulink documentation for a summary of user-settable model parameters.  |
|             |  |

| Purpose     | Generate HDL RTL code from Simulink model or subsystem   |
|-------------|--|
| Syntax      | <pre>makehdl() makehdl(bdroot) makehdl('modelname') makehdl('modelname/subsys') makehdl(gcb) makehdl('PropertyName', PropertyValue,) makehdl(bdroot, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,) makehdl('modelname', 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,) makehdl('modelname/subsys','PropertyName',PropertyValue,) makehdl(gcb, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,)</pre>   |
| Description | <pre>makehdl generates HDL RTL code (VHDL or Verilog) from a Simulink<br/>model or subsystem. We will refer to a model or subsystem from which<br/>code is generated as the <i>device under test (DUT)</i>.<br/>makehdl() generates HDL code from the current Simulink model (by<br/>default), using default values for all properties.<br/>makehdl(bdroot) generates HDL code from the current Simulink<br/>model, using default values for all properties.<br/>makehdl('modelname') generates HDL code from the Simulink model<br/>explicitly specified by 'modelname', using default values for all<br/>properties.</pre> |
|             | <pre>makehdl('modelname/subsys') generates HDL code from a subsystem<br/>within the Simulink model specified by 'modelname', using default<br/>values for all properties.<br/>'subsys' specifies the name of the subsystem. In the current release,<br/>this must be a subsystem at the top (root) level of the current Simulink<br/>model; it cannot be a subsystem nested at a lower level of the model<br/>hierarchy.<br/>makehdl(gcb) generates HDL code from the currently selected<br/>subsystem within the current Simulink model, using default values<br/>for all properties.</pre>                                 |

makehdl('PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) generates HDL code from the current Simulink model (by default), explicitly specifying one or more code generation options as property/value pairs.

makehdl(bdroot, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) generates HDL code from the current Simulink model, explicitly specifying one or more code generation options as property/value pairs.

makehdl('modelname', 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
generates HDL code from the Simulink model explicitly specified by
'modelname', explicitly specifying one or more code generation options
as property/value pairs.

makehdl('modelname/subsys', 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
generates HDL code from a subsystem within the Simulink model
specified by 'modelname', explicitly specifying one or more code
generation options as property/value pairs.

'subsys' specifies the name of the subsystem. In the current release, this must be a subsystem at the top (root) level of the current Simulink model; it cannot be a subsystem nested at a lower level of the model hierarchy.

makehdl(gcb, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) generates HDL code from the currently selected subsystem within the current Simulink model, explicitly specifying one or more code generation options as property/value pairs.

Property/value pairs are passed in the form

'PropertyName', PropertyValue

These property settings determine characteristics of the generated code, such as HDL element naming and whether certain optimizations are applied. The next section, "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13, summarizes the default actions of the code generator.

For detailed descriptions of each property and its effect on generated code, see Chapter 12, "Properties — Alphabetical List" and Chapter 11, "Properties — By Category".

#### **HDL Code Generation Defaults**

This section summarizes the default actions of the code generator. Most defaults can be overridden by passing in appropriate property/value settings to makehd1. Chapter 12, "Properties — Alphabetical List" describes all makehd1 properties in detail.

#### Target Language, File Packaging and Naming

- The TargetLanguage property determines whether VHDL or Verilog code is generated. The default is VHDL.
- makehdl writes generated files to hdlsrc, a subdirectory of the current working directory. This directory is called the *target directory*. makehdl creates a target directory if it does not already exist.
- makehdl generates separate HDL source files for the DUT and each subsystem within it. In addition, makehdl generates script files for HDL simulation and synthesis tools. File names derive from the Simulink names of the DUT. File names are assigned by Simulink HDL Coder and are not user-assignable. The following table summarizes file-naming conventions.

| File        | Name                                       |
|-------------|--|
| Verilog     | <pre>system.v, where system is the</pre>   |
| source code | name of the DUT.                           |
| VHDL        | <pre>system.vhd, where system is the</pre> |
| source code | name of the DUT.                           |

| File                              | Name   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Timing<br>controller<br>code      | Timing_Controller.vhd (VHDL)<br>or Timing_Controller.v<br>(Verilog). This file contains a<br>module defining timing signals<br>(clock, reset, external clock<br>enable inputs and clock enable<br>output) in a separate entity or<br>module. Timing controller code<br>is generated if required by the<br>design; a purely combinatorial<br>model does not generate timing<br>controller code. |
| ModelSim<br>compilation<br>script | <pre>system_compile.do, where system is the name of the DUT.</pre>   |
| Synplify<br>synthesis<br>script   | <pre>system_synplify.tcl, where system is the name of the DUT.</pre>   |
| VHDL<br>package<br>file           | <i>system_</i> pkg.vhd, where <i>system</i><br>is the name of the DUT. A package<br>file is generated only if the design<br>requires a VHDL package.   |
| Mapping<br>file                   | system_map.txt, where system is<br>the name of the DUT. This report<br>file maps generated entities<br>(or modules) to the Simulink<br>subsystems that generated them.<br>See "Code Tracing Using the<br>Mapping File" on page 6-5.  |

#### **Entities, Ports, and Signals**

• Unique names are assigned to generated VHDL entities or Verilog modules. Entity or module names are derived from the

names of the DUT. Name conflicts are resolved by the use of a postfix string.

• HDL port names are assigned according to the following conventions:

| HDL Port            | Name  |
|---------------------|---|
| Input               | Same as corresponding<br>port name on the DUT (name<br>conflicts resolved according to<br>rules of the target language) |
| Output              | Same as corresponding<br>port name on the DUT (name<br>conflicts resolved according to<br>rules of the target language) |
| Clock input         | clk   |
| Clock enable input  | clk_enable  |
| Clock enable output | ce_out  |
| Reset input         | reset   |

- HDL port directions and data types
  - Port direction: IN or OUT, corresponding to the port on the DUT.
  - Clock, clock enable, and reset port data types: VHDL type STD\_LOGIC\_VECTOR or Verilog type wire.
  - Input and output port data types: VHDL type STD\_LOGIC\_VECTOR or Verilog type wire. Port widths are determined by Simulink.
- HDL signal names and data types:
  - HDL signals generated from named Simulink signals retain their signal names.

- For unnamed Simulink signals, HDL signal names are derived from the concatenated names of the block and port connected to the signal in the DUT: blockname\_portname. Conflicting names are made unique according to VHDL or Verilog rules.
- Signal data types are determined by the data type of the corresponding Simulink signal. Each signal declaration is annotated with a comment indicating the Simulink data type.

#### **General HDL Code Settings**

- VHDL-specific defaults:
  - Generated VHDL files include both entity and architecture code.
  - VHDL configurations are placed in any file that instantiates a component.
  - VHDL code checks for rising edges via the logic IF clock'event AND clock='1' THEN..., when operating on registers.
  - When creating labels for VHDL GENERATE statements, makehdl appends \_gen to section and block names. makehdl names output assignment block labels with the string outputgen.
- A type-safe representation is used for concatenated zeros: '0' & '0'...
- Generated code for registers uses asynchronous reset logic with an active-high (1) reset level.
- The postfix string \_process is appended to process names.
- For Microsoft Windows, carriage return/linefeed (CRLF) character sequences are never emitted in generated code.

#### **Code Optimizations**

• In general, generated HDL code produces results that are bit-true and cycle-accurate with respect to the original Simulink model (that is, the HDL code exactly reproduces simulation results from the Simulink model).

However, some block implementations generate code that includes certain block-specific performance and area optimizations. These optimizations can produce numeric results or timing differences that differ from those produced by the original Simulink model (see Chapter 5, "Generating Bit-True Cycle-Accurate Models").

# **Examples** • The following call to makehdl generates Verilog code for the subsystem symmetric fir within the model sfir fixed.

makehdl('sfir\_fixed/symmetric\_fir','TargetLanguage', 'Verilog')

• The following call to makehdl generates VHDL code for the current model. Code is generated into the target directory hdlsrc, with all code generation options set to default values.

makehdl(bdroot)

• The following call to makehdl directs the HDL compatibility checker (see checkhdl) to check the subsystem symmetric\_fir within the model sfir\_fixed before code generation starts. If no compatibility errors are encountered, makehdl generates VHDL code for the subsystem symmetric\_fir. Code is generated into the target directory hdlsrc, with all code generation options set to default values.

```
makehdl('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir','CheckHDL','on')
```

**See Also** makehdltb, checkhdl

## makehdltb

| Purpose     | Generate HDL test bench from Simulink model   |
|-------------|---|
| Syntax      | makehdltb('modelname/subsys')<br>makehdltb('modelname/subsys', 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,<br>)  |
| Description | <pre>makehdltb('modelname/subsys') generates an HDL test bench from<br/>the specified subsystem within a Simulink model, using default values<br/>for all properties. The modelname/subsys argument gives the Simulink<br/>path to the subsystem under test. This subsystem must be at the top<br/>(root) level of the current Simulink model. The generated test bench is<br/>designed to interface to and validate HDL code generated from subsys<br/>(or from a subsystem with a functionally identical public interface).</pre> |
|             | A typical practice is to generate HDL code for a subsystem, followed<br>immediately by generation of a test bench to validate the same<br>subsystem (see "Examples" on page 13-21).   |
|             | <b>Note</b> If makehdl has not previously executed successfully within the current MATLAB session, makehdltb generates model code before generating the test bench code.  |
|             | Test bench code and model code must both be generated in the same target language. If the target language specified for makehdltb differs from the target language specified for the previous makehdl execution, makehdltb will regenerate model code in the same language specified for the test bench.  |
|             | Properties passed in to makehdl persist after makehdl executes, and (unless explicitly overridden) will be passed in to subsequent makehdltb calls during the same MATLAB session.  |
|             | makehdltb('modelname/subsys', 'PropertyName',<br>PropertyValue,) generates an HDL test bench from the specified   |

subsystem within a Simulink model, explicitly specifying one or more code generation options as property/value pairs.

Property/value pairs are passed in the form

'PropertyName', PropertyValue

These property settings determine characteristics of the test bench code. Many of these properties are identical to those for makehdl, while others are specific to test bench generation (for example, options for generation of test bench stimuli). The next section, "Defaults for Test Bench Code Generation" on page 13-19, summarizes the defaults that are specific to generated test bench code.

For detailed descriptions of each property and its effect on generated code, see Chapter 12, "Properties — Alphabetical List" and Chapter 11, "Properties — By Category".

#### **Generating Stimulus and Output Data**

makehdltb generates test data from Simulink signals connected to inputs of the subsystem under test. Sample values for each stimulus signal are computed and stored for each time step of the simulation. The signal data is represented as arrays in the generated test bench code.

To help you validate generated HDL code, makehdltb also generates output data from Simulink signals connected to outputs of the subsystem under test. Like input data, sample values for each output signal are computed and stored for each time step of the simulation. The signal data is represented as arrays in the generated test bench code.

The Simulink total simulation time (set by the model's **Stop Time** parameter) determines the size of the stimulus and output data arrays. Computation of sample values can be time-consuming. Consider speeding up generation of signal data by entering a shorter **Stop Time**.

#### **Defaults for Test Bench Code Generation**

This section describes defaults that apply specifically to generation of test bench code. makehdltb has many properties and defaults in common with makehdl. See "HDL Code Generation Defaults" on page 13-13 for a summary of these common properties and defaults.

#### **File Packaging and Naming**

makehdltb generates an HDL source file containing test bench code and arrays of stimulus and output data. In addition, makehdltb generates script files that let you execute a ModelSim simulation of the test bench and the HDL entity under test. Generated test bench file names (like makehdl generated file names) are based on the name of the DUT. The following table summarizes the default test bench file-naming conventions.

| File                              | Name  |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Verilog test<br>bench             | <pre>system_tb.v, where system is the name of the system under test</pre>   |
| VHDL test<br>bench                | <pre>system_tb.vhd, where system is the name of the system under test</pre> |
| ModelSim<br>compilation<br>script | <pre>system_tb_compile.do, where system is the name of the DUT</pre>        |
| ModelSim<br>simulation<br>script  | <pre>system_tb_sim.do, where system is the name of the DUT</pre>            |

#### **Other Test Bench Settings**

- The test bench forces clock, clock enable, and reset input signals.
- The test bench forces clock enable and reset input to active high (1).
- The clock input signal is driven high (1) for 5 nanoseconds and low (0) for 5 nanoseconds.
- The test bench forces reset signals.

|          | • The test bench applies a hold time of 2 nanoseconds to reset and data input signals.  |  |
|----------|---|--|
| Examples | In the following example, makehdl generates VHDL code for the subsystem symmetric_fir. After Simulink HDL Coder indicates successful completion of code generation, makehdltb generates a VHDL test bench for the same subsystem. |  |
|          | makehdl('sfir fixed/symmetric fir')   |  |
|          | ### Applying HDL Code Generation Control Statements   |  |
|          | ### Begin VHDL Code Generation  |  |
|          | ### Working on sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir as hdlsrc\symmetric_fir.vhd   |  |
| •        | ### HDL Code Generation Complete.   |  |
|          | <pre>makehdltb('sfir_fixed/symmetric_fir') #### Design TestDesch Constant</pre>   |  |
|          | ### Begin TestBench Generation<br>### Generating Test bench: hdlsrc\symmetric_fir_tb.vhd  |  |
|          | ### Please wait   |  |
|          | ### HDL TestBench Generation Complete.  |  |
| See Also | makehdl   |  |



# Examples

Use this list to find examples in the documentation.

## **Generating HDL Code Using MATLAB Commands**

"Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-6 "Initializing Model Parameters with hdlsetup" on page 2-7 "Generating a VHDL Entity from a Subsystem" on page 2-9 "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-11 "Verifying Generated Code" on page 2-12 "Creating the Model and Configuring General Model Settings" on page 9-9

## **Generating HDL Code in the Simulink Environment**

"Creating Directories and Local Model File" on page 2-18 "Initializing Model Parameters With hdlsetup" on page 2-19 "Viewing Simulink HDL Coder Options in the Configuration Parameters Dialog Box" on page 2-20 "Selecting and Checking a Subsystem for HDL Compatibility" on page 2-22 "Generating VHDL Code" on page 2-25 "Generating VHDL Test Bench Code" on page 2-27 "Verifying Generated Code" on page 2-29

## Verifying Generated HDL Code in an HDL Simulator

"Simulating and Verifying Generated HDL Code" on page 2-30

# Index

## A

addition operations typecasting 12-3 advanced coding properties 11-5 application-specific integrated circuits (ASICs) 1-2 architectures setting postfix from command line 12-56 asserted level, reset setting 12-49 asynchronous resets setting from command line 12-51

## B

bit-true cycle-accurate models bit-true to generated HDL code 5-2 block implementations defined 4-3 Gain 4-21 Lookup Table 4-21 Maximum 4-21 Minimum 4-21 MinMax 4-21 multiple 4-21 Product of Elements 4-21 special purpose 4-21 specifying in control file 4-17 Subsystem 4-21 Sum of Elements 4-21 summary of 4-27 block labels for GENERATE statements 12-2 for output assignment blocks 12-45 specifying postfix for 12-2 BlockGenerateLabel property 12-2 blockscope 4-7

#### С

CastBeforeSum property 12-3 checkhdl function 13-2 CheckHDL property 12-4 clock specifying high time for 12-7 specifying low time for 12-9 clock enable input port specifying forced signals for 12-16 clock input port 12-8 specifying forced 12-15 clock process names specifying postfix for 12-10 clock time high 12-7 low 12-9 ClockEnableInputPort property 12-5 ClockEnableOutputPort property 12-6 ClockHighTime property 12-7 ClockInputPort property 12-8 ClockLowTime property 12-9 ClockProcessPostfix property 12-10 code generation control files. See control files code, generated advanced properties for customizing 11-5 CodeGenerationOutput property 12-11 comments, header as property value 12-64 **Configuration Parameters dialog box** HDL Coder options in 3-2 configurations, inline suppressing from command line 12-40 constants setting representation from command line 12-63 control files attaching to model 4-14

control object method calls in 4-7 forAll 4-11 forEach 4-7 generateHDLFor 4-11 hdlnewcontrol 4-7 set 4-11 creation of 4-13 demo for 4-3 detaching to model 4-16 GUI options for 3-8 loading 4-14 objects instantiated in 4-7 purpose of 4-2 required elements for 4-5 saving 4-13 selecting block implementations in 4-3 specifying implementation mappings in 4-3 statement types in property setting 4-2 selection/action 4-2

## D

data input port specifying hold time for 12-38 directory, target 12-59

## E

EDA Tool Scripts pane 3-19 EDAScriptGeneration property 12-12 electronic design automation (EDA) tools generation of scripts for customized 10-4 defaults for 10-3 overview of 10-2 Embedded MATLAB design patterns in 9-27 Embedded MATLAB Function block HDL code generation for 9-3 language support 9-45 limitations 9-53 setting fixed point options 9-11 tutorial example 9-5 recommended settings for HDL code generation 9-43 EnablePrefix property 12-13 entities setting postfix from command line 12-58 entity name conflicts 12-14 EntityConflictPostfix property 12-14

#### F

field programmable gate arrays (FPGAs) 1-2 file extensions Verilog 12-70 VHDL 12-71 file location properties 11-2 file names for architectures 12-56 for entities 12-58 file naming properties 11-2 files, generated splitting 12-57 force reset hold time 12-38 ForceClock property 12-15 ForceClockEnable property 12-16 ForceReset property 12-17 FPGAs (field programmable gate arrays) 1-2 functions checkhdl 13-2 hdllib 13-6 hdlnewforeach 13-7 hdlsetup 13-10 makehdl 13-11 makehdltb 13-18

#### G

generated models bit-true to generated HDL code 5-2 cycle-accuracy of 5-2 default options for 5-12 display of 3-10 example of numeric differences 5-4 GUI options for 5-13 highlighted blocks in 5-12 latency example 5-8 makehd1 properties for 5-14 naming conventions for 5-12 options for 5-12 Generatedmodelname property 12-18 Generatedmodelnameprefix property 12-19

#### Η

hardware description languages (HDLs) 1-2 See also Verilog; VHDL HDL Coder Code Generation Control File pane File name field 3-8 Load button 3-8 Save button 3-8 HDL Coder Code Generation Output pane Display generated model only option 3-10 Generate HDL code and display generated model 3-10 Generate HDL code option 3-10 HDL Coder Global Settings pane 3-11 Advanced options 3-16 Cast before sum 3-16 Concatenate type safe zeros 3-16 Loop unrolling 3-16 Represent constant values by aggregates 3-16 Use "rising edge" for registers 3-16 Use Inline VHDL configuration 3-16 Use Verilog "timescale directives" 3-16

Clock settings 3-11 Clock Enable Port 3-11 Clock Input Port 3-11 Reset Asserted Level 3-11 **Reset Input Port 3-11** Reset type 3-11 General options 3-12 Clocked process postfix 3-12 Comment in header 3-12 Entity conflict postfix 3-12 Package postfix 3-12 Reserved word postfix 3-12 Split archfile postfix 3-12 Split entity and architecture 3-12 Split entity file postfix 3-12 Verilog file extension 3-12 Ports options 3-15 Clock enable output port 3-15 Input data type 3-15 Output data type 3-15 HDL Coder GUI summary of options in 3-6 HDL Coder main pane Generate button 3-6 Restore Factory Defaults button 3-6 Run Compatibility Checker button 3-6 HDL Coder menu 3-4 HDL Coder options in Configuration Parameters dialog box 3-2 in Model Explorer 3-3 in Simulink Tools menu 3-4 HDL Coder Target pane Directory option 3-9 Generate HDL for option 3-9 Language option 3-9 HDL Coder Test Bench pane 3-25 Clock high time 3-25 Clock low time 3-25 Force clock 3-25 Force clock enable 3-25

Force reset 3-25 Generate Test Bench button 3-25 Hold time (ns) 3-25 Test bench name postfix 3-25 HDLCompileFilePostfix property 12-22 HDLCompileInit property 12-20 HDLCompileTerm property 12-21 HDLCompileVerilogCmd property 12-23 HDLCompileVHDLCmd property 12-24 HDLControlfiles property 12-25 hdllib function 13-6 HDLMapPostfix property 12-26 hdlnewforeach function 13-7 example 4-17 generating forEach calls with 4-17 HDLs (hardware description languages) 1-2 See also Verilog; VHDL hdlsetup function 13-10 HDLSimCmd property 12-27 HDLSimFilePostfix property 12-29 HDLSimInit property 12-28 HDLSimTerm property 12-30 HDLSimViewWaveCmd property 12-31 HDLSynthCmd property 12-32 HDLSynthFilePostfix property 12-34 HDLSynthInit property 12-33 HDLSynthTerm property 12-35 header comment properties 11-3 Highlightancestors property 12-36 Highlightcolor property 12-37 hold time 12-38 HoldTime property 12-38

## 

implementation mapping defined 4-3 inline configurations specifying 12-40 InlineConfigurations property 12-40 input ports specifying data type for 12-41 InputType property 12-41 instance sections 12-42 InstanceGenerateLabel property 12-42 InstancePrefix property 12-43

#### L

labels block 12-45 language target 12-60 language selection properties 11-2 11-7 loops unrolling 12-44 LoopUnrolling property 12-44

#### Μ

makehdl function 13-11 makehdltb function 13-18 Model Explorer HDL Coder options in 3-3 modelscope 4-7

#### Ν

name conflicts 12-14 names clock process 12-10 package file 12-47 naming properties 11-3

#### 0

output ports specifying data type for 12-46 OutputGenerateLabel property 12-45 OutputType property 12-46

#### Ρ

package files specifying postfix for 12-47 PackagePostfix property 12-47 port properties 11-5 ports clock enable input 12-5 clock input 12-8 input 12-41 output 12-46 reset input 12-50 properties advanced coding 11-5 BlockGenerateLabel 12-2 CastBeforeSum 12-3 CheckHDL 12-4 ClockEnableInputPort 12-5 ClockEnableOutputPort 12-6 ClockHighTime 12-7 ClockInputPort 12-8 ClockLowTime 12-9 ClockProcessPostfix 12-10 CodeGenerationOutput 12-11 coding 11-5 EDAScriptGeneration 12-12 EnablePrefix 12-13 EntityConflictPostfix 12-14 file location 11-2 file naming 11-2 ForceClock 12-15 ForceClockEnable 12-16 ForceReset 12-17 generated models 11-7 Generatedmodelname 12-18 Generatedmodelnameprefix 12-19 HDLCompileFilePostfix 12-22 HDLCompileInit 12-20 HDLCompileTerm 12-21 HDLCompileVerilogCmd 12-23 HDLCompileVHDLCmd 12-24

HDLControlfiles 12-25 HDLMapPostfix 12-26 HDLSimCmd 12-27 HDLSimFilePostfix 12-29 HDLSimInit 12-28 HDLSimTerm 12-30 HDLSimViewWaveCmd 12-31 HDLSynthCmd 12-32 HDLSynthFilePostfix 12-34 HDLSynthInit 12-33 HDLSynthTerm 12-35 header comment 11-3 Highlightancestors 12-36 Highlightcolor 12-37 HoldTime 12-38 InlineConfigurations 12-40 InputType 12-41 InstanceGenerateLabel 12-42 InstancePrefix 12-43 language selection 11-2 LoopUnrolling 12-44 naming 11-3 OutputGenerateLabel 12-45 OutputType 12-46 PackagePostfix 12-47 port 11-5 ReservedWordPostfix 12-48 reset 11-2ResetAssertedLevel 12-49 ResetInputPort 12-50 ResetType 12-51 ResetValue 12-53 SafeZeroConcat 12-54 script generation 11-4 SimulatorFlags 12-55 SplitArchFilePostfix 12-56 SplitEntityArch 12-57 SplitEntityFilePostfix 12-58 TargetDirectory 12-59 TargetLanguage 12-60

test bench 11-7 TestBenchPostfix 12-61 TestBenchReferencePostFix 12-62 UseAggregatesForConst 12-63 UserComment 12-64 UseRisingEdge 12-65 UseVerilogTimescale 12-67 VectorPrefix 12-68 Verbosity 12-69 VerilogFileExtension 12-70 VHDLFileExtension 12-71

## R

reserved words specifying postfix for 12-48 ReservedWordPostfix property 12-48 reset input port 12-50 reset properties 11-2 ResetAssertedLevel property 12-49 ResetInputPort property 12-50 resets setting asserted level for 12-49 specifying forced 12-17 types of 12-51 ResetType property 12-51 ResetValue property 12-53 restoring factory default options 4-16

## S

SafeZeroConcat property 12-54 script generation properties 11-4 sections instance 12-42 SimulatorFlags property 12-55 Simulink HDL Coder demos 1-9 features of 1-3 installing 1-8

online help 1-9 prerequisite knowledge for 1-6 software requirements for 1-7 Stateflow support for 8-2 user profiles for 1-6 Verilog version compatibility 1-8 VHDL version compatibility 1-8 what is 1-2 SplitArchFilePostfix property 12-56 SplitEntityArch property 12-57 SplitEntityFilePostfix property 12-58 Stateflow charts code generation 8-2 requirements for 8-5 restrictions on 8-5 subtraction operations typecasting 12-3 synchronous resets setting from command line 12-51

#### T

target directory GUI option for 3-9 target language GUI option for 3-9 TargetDirectory property 12-59 TargetLanguage property 12-60 test bench properties 11-7 test benches specifying clock enable input for 12-16 specifying forced clock input for 12-15 specifying forced resets for 12-17 TestBenchPostfix property 12-61 TestBenchReferencePostFix property 12-62 time clock high 12-7 clock low 12-9 hold 12-38 timescale directives

specifying use of 12-67 typecasting 12-3

## U

UseAggregatesForConst property 12-63 UserComment property 12-64 UseRisingEdge property 12-65 UseVerilogTimescale property 12-67

#### V

VectorPrefix property 12-68

Verbosity property 12-69
Verilog 1-2
 file extension 12-70
VerilogFileExtension property 12-70
VHDL 1-2
 file extension 12-71
VHDLFileExtension property 12-71

## Z

zeros, concatenated 12-54